

THE  
BIRTH OF  
MANKYNDE

ROESSLIN

1575





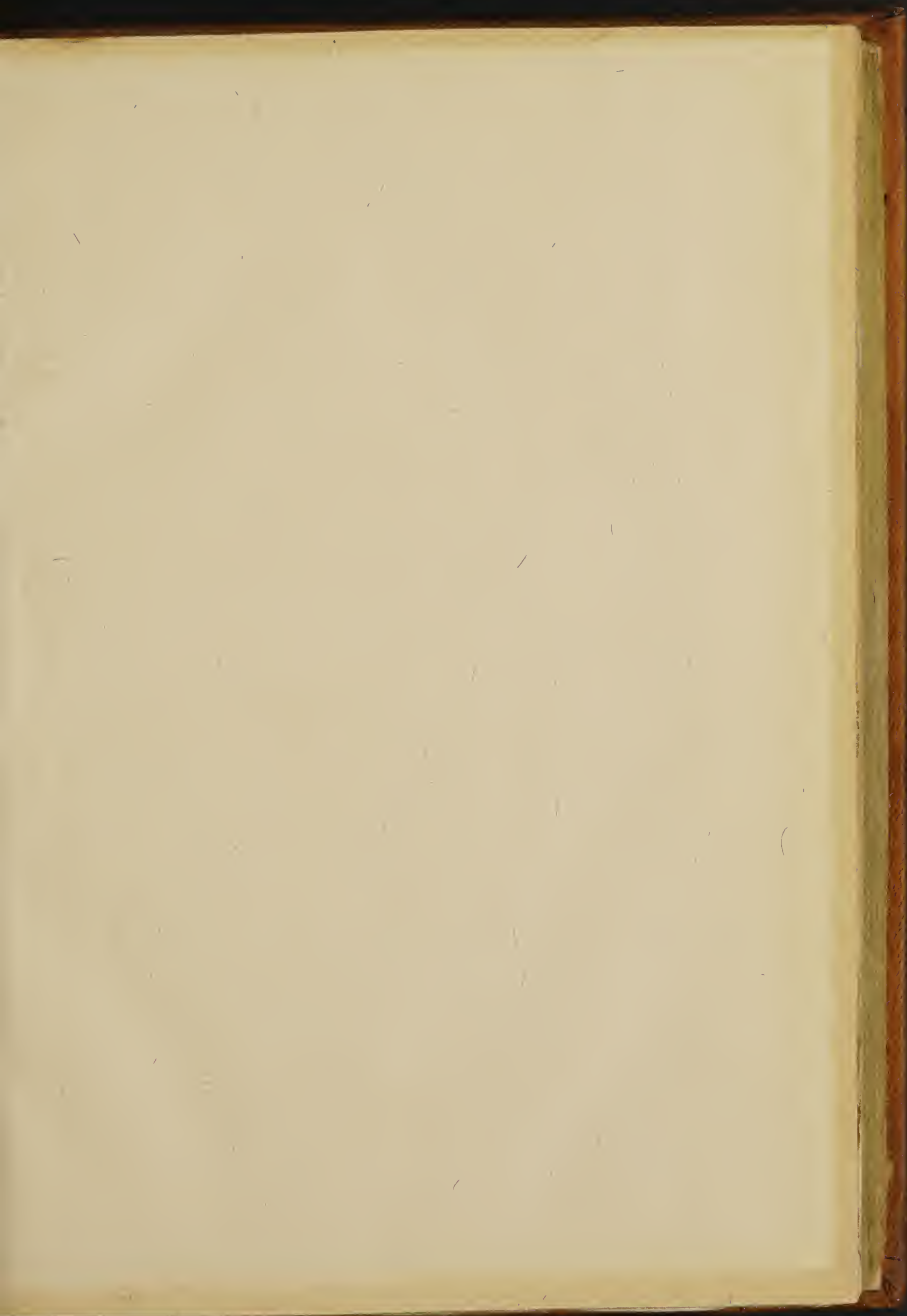


5514. / B

S.T.C. 21159.

[London: J. Jugge? - 1585?]

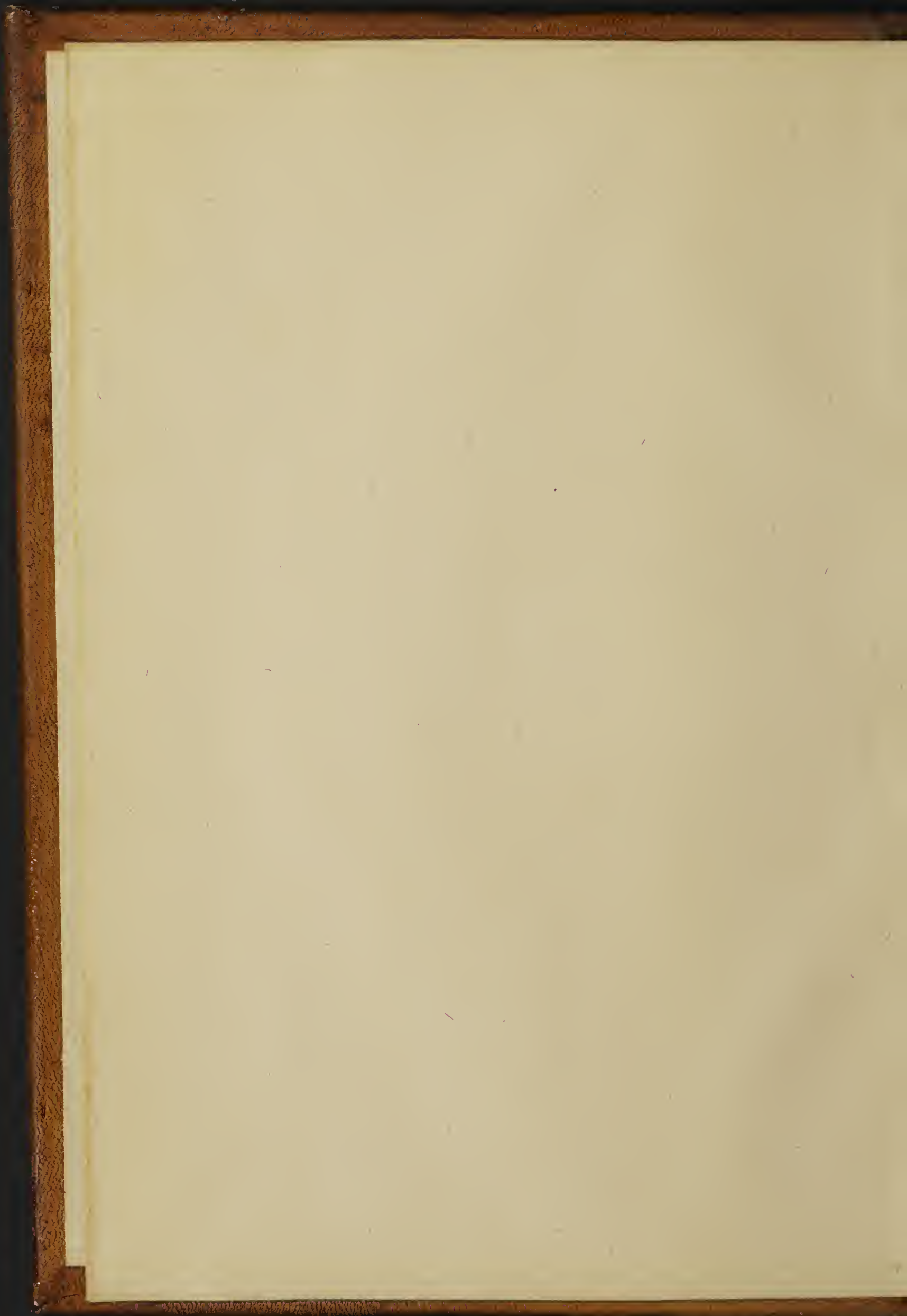
Anatomical illus. wanting













*Rick* *Wright*  
**The Birth**

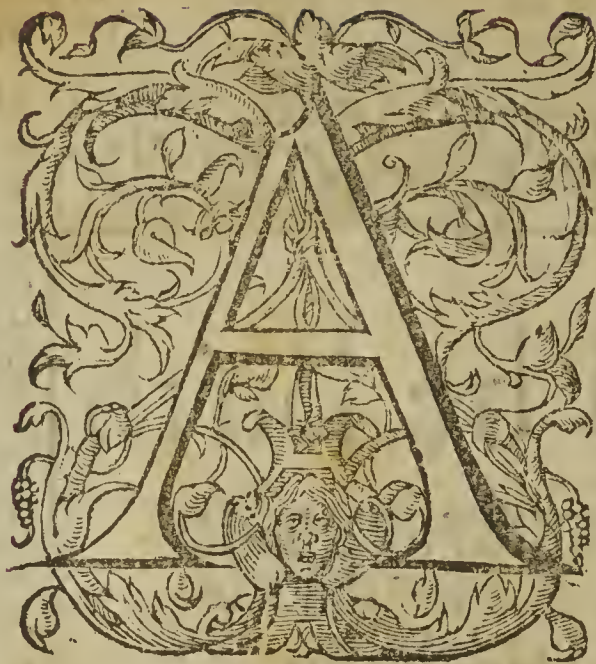
of mankynde, other-  
wyle named the wo-  
mans booke.

Newly set forth, corrected, and  
augmented. whose con-  
tentes ye may reade in  
the Table of the  
booke, and  
most  
plainely in the  
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde  
Phisition.

*Elizabeth the first is the  
true owner of this booke*





Let be it some Aristarchus may perhappes fynde some lacke of faythfulnes and diligence in this worke: yet there is none so froward to deny, but that there is some fruite and profyte to be found therein, seeing that it commeth nowe abroade muche

more enlarged and encreased, and more diligently corrected then it was before eyther in the Latine or in the Englyshe. And where before in the other printes, there lacked matter necessarie to the openyng and declaration of the fygures parteyning to the inner partes: it is nowe so playnely set forth, that the simplest Wydwyfe which can reade, may both vnderstande for her better instruction, & also other women that haue neede of her helpe, the more commoditie. Wherefore my desyre is, that it may be receyued and practised of Wydwyues and all other matrones, with no lesse successe then

it is with good wyll and  
desyre wrytten to  
profite,  
and to doo good  
to other.

29374



The Table of this present Booke.



First a Prologue  
to the women  
readers.

In this. i. Cha-  
piter is briefly  
declared the co-  
tentes of the  
first Booke.

Capit. i.

In how many  
coates the bo-  
dy is lapped or  
involued.

*Chapter*

Cap. ii.

Here is declared what the Muscles be. Cap. iii.

Fol. iiii.

Of the Bell, called Peritoneum.

Cap. iiii.

Fol. v.

The declaration of the names and nature of  
the Matrix. Cap. v.

Fol. vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi.

Fol. vii.

Of the Mother port. Cap. vii.

Fol. x.

Of the vesselles of seede, called the stones, with  
other thereto appertaynyng.

Cap. viii.

Fol. xi.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

Fol. xii.

Of the office and vse of these seede bryngers.

Cap. x.

Fol. xiiii.

Of the way by the which the seede is sent from  
the stones, to the angles or corners of the ma-  
trix. Cap. xi.

Fol. xv.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in  
women. Cap. xii.

Fol. xvi.

A. ii.

Of

## The Table.

Of the baynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes thereof. Item, of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii. fol. xxiii.

Of the three calles or wrappers wherein the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii. fol. xxix.

Which of the three Matrix baynes conterne the Termes, and how the milke cometh to the womans breastes. Cap. xv. fol. xxxv.

The declaration by letters of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye euery part in woman mentioned in this booke before.

Of the fyrst figure. fol. xlii.

Of the seconde figure. fol. xlv.

Of the thyrde figure. fol. xlvi.

The fourth figure. fol. xlvi.

The fyfth figure. fol. xlix.

The syrth figure. eodem.

The. vii. viii. and. ix. figures. fol. l.

## The Table of the seconde Booke.



Of the tyme of byrth, and which is called naturall or unnaturall. Cap. i. fol. li.

Of easy and breasy, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, & the causes of it, with the signes how to know and foresee the same. Cap. ii. fol. liii.

How a woman with chyld shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue hard

## The Table.

- hard labour. Cap. iiii. fol. lviij.
- Remedies and medicines by the which the labour may be made tollerable, easie, and without great payne. Cap. v. fol. lxx.
- How the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, yf it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. vi. fol. lxxii.
- How many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, and how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vii. fol. lxxiiii.
- Of aborcementes or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. viii. fol. lxxvi.
- Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix. fol. lxxviii.
- In the last Chapter of this booke be briefely resited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the chiefe purpose entended in this present booke. Cap. x. fol. lxxx.

### The thyrde Booke.



In this fyrst Chapter of this thirde booke is fyrst declared the matters therein contained, & then how the infant newly borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i. fol. lxxviii.

## The Table.

Of the Nurse and her mylke, and how long the chylde should sucke. Cap. ii.	f. C.
Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce to chylde[n] lately borne, and the remedies therefore. Cap. iii.	f. Ciii.
Of the fluxe and ouermuch loosenes of the belly. Cap. iiii.	f. Ciiii.
To vnloose the chylde, beyng bounde.	f. Cv.
Remedie for the Cough and distillation or catarrhes of the head.	f. Cvi.
Remedie for short wynde.	f. Cvii.
Against wheales or bladders on the tong. eodem.	
Of erulceration or clefture, chappung or chynnyng of the mouth.	f. Cviii.
Of apostumation and runnyng of the eares.	f. Cix.
Of apostumation in the head.	f. Cx.
Of the swelling or bolning of the eyes. eodem.	
Of the scumme or whyte of the eye. eodem.	
Against immoderate heate of the feuer. eodem.	
Against frettyng or gnawing in the belly.	f. Cxi.
Agaynst swelling of the body.	eodem.
Agaynst often sneesyng.	eodem.
Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.	f. Cxii.
Agaynst swelling of the Coddes.	eodem.
Agaynst swelling of the Nauyll.	eodem.
Agaynst vnsleepynesse.	f. Cxiii.
Agaynst yeryng or the hychate.	eodem.
Agaynst often parbreakyng by weakenesse and feblenesse of the stomache.	f. Cxiiii.
Agaynst terrible dreames.	f. Cxv.
Agaynst	



## The Table.

- Agaynst issuing forth of the fundement gutte.  
fol. eodem.  
Agaynst Tenasmus. eodem.  
Agaynst Wormes in the belly. eodem.  
Of chafyng or gallyng of any place of the body.  
fol. Cxvi.  
Of the falling sicknesse. eodem.  
Consumption or pynnyng away of the body.  
fol. Cxvii.  
Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauinesse of the  
chylves body. eodem.  
Of trembling of the body, or of certaine mem-  
bers of the body, called the pallsie. fol. Cxviii.  
Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stoppyng  
of the brine. eodem.  
Of gogle eyes, or looking a squint. fol. Cxix.

### The fourth booke.



Cap. iii.

If suche thynges the  
which shalbe entrea-  
ted of in this fourth  
booke. Cap. i. fol. cxx.  
Of conceptio, & how  
many wayes it may  
be hindred or letted.  
Cap. ii. fol. eodem.  
Howe many wayes  
conceptio may be  
letted, & how the cau-  
ses may be knowen.

fol. Cxxi.

How

## The Table.

- How to knowe whether lacke of conception be  
of the woman or of the man, and how it may  
be perceiued whether she be conceaued or no.  
Cap. iiii. fol. Cxxiii.
- Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche  
may further the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.  
fol. Cxxiiii.
- Of diuers bellifying receiptes. fol. Cxxvi.
- Of the causes and remedies for dandruffe of the  
head. fol. Cxxvii.
- To take away heere from places where it is vn-  
seemely. fol. Cxxviii.
- To do away frekens or other spottes in the face.  
fol. Cxxix.
- To destroy wartes and suche lyke excresenss on  
the face, or els where. eodem.
- To cleare and claryfie the skinne in the handes,  
face, or other part of the body. fol. eodem.
- To souple and molifie the ruggednesse of the  
skinne. fol. Cxxx.
- Agaynst sodayne rylnges of pynples through  
vnrkind heate in the face, or els where. eodem.
- To keepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.
- Of stinkyng breath. fol. eodem.
- Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes. eodem.

¶ Here endeth the Table.

# A Prologue to the women readers.



Erre in the beginning  
of this presente Pro-  
logue, I wil folow the  
example of them, whi-  
che when they bid any  
ghestes to dynner or  
supper, are wont fyrst  
to declare what shall  
be their cheare, what  
fare, & how many dy-  
shes they shall haue,

praying thē to take it in good woorth, & to looke  
for neither better ne worse then hath been men-  
tioned of: And euen so here wyll I doo. Before  
that ye enter into the readyng of this little trea-  
tise, I shall succinctly & in few wordes resite the  
summe & cheefe contentes of the same, with the  
btilitie and profite. which may ensue to the dili-  
gent and attentife ouerreader thereof, to the end  
that ye of these thynges beyng fyrst wel aduerti-  
sed, may haue the more or lesse courage to em-  
ploy your labour in ouerloking and perusing of  
the same. For commonly it doth occasionate any  
man to be the more prompt, redy, and wylling  
to take payne, when he is assured or certified of  
the profite, purpose, and fruite therof comming:  
and lyke wyse it is a great pricke or allurement,  
entising and mouing a man to reade any booke,  
when he is somewhat fyrst admonished of the  
matters comprehended and contayned therein.

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye

B. i.

shall

The entent of  
the Auctour.

# The Prologue.

The more part  
of this booke  
translated into  
English thre  
or foure yeeres  
past.

The name of  
this booke.

shal vnderstand that about thre or foure yeeres  
past, a certayne studious and diligent clarke,  
at the request and desyre of diuers honest and  
sadde matrones, beyng of his acquayntaunce,  
dyd translate out of Latine into English a great  
part of this booke, entitulyng it accordyng to  
the Latine inscription De partu hominis, that  
is to say, Of the byrth of Mankinde: which we  
now doo name, The Womans booke, for so  
much as the most part, or well neare all therein  
entreated of, dooth concerne and touch onely  
Women. In which his translation he varied  
or declyned nothyng at all from the steppes of  
his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelytie  
in translatyng, then choyse or discretion at that  
time in admittynge and allowyng many thinges  
in the same booke, greatly needyng admonition  
and wary aduise or counsel to the readers, which  
otherwise might sometimes vse that for a helpe,  
the which should turne to a hinderance. Where-  
fore I reuoluyng and earnestly reuysyng from  
top to toe the sayd booke, and here withall consi-  
dering the manyfolde vtilitie and profite which  
thereby mought ensue to all women (as tou-  
chyng that purpose) yf it were more narrowly  
looked ouer, and with a straighter iudgement  
more exactly euery thyng therein pondred and  
tryed, thought my laboure and paynes shoulde  
not be euyl employed, ne vnthankefully accep-  
ted and receyued of all honest, discrete, and sage  
women, yf I after good and diligent perusyng  
thereof, dyd correct and amende such faultes in  
it,

# The Prologue.

it, as seemed worthy of the same, and to advise the readers what thynges were good, or intollerable to be used, which were dangerous, and which were vtterly to be exchued. The which thyng I haue not onely so done, but ouer this, haue thereunto adioyned and annexed dyuers other more experimented & more familiar medicines. And farther haue in the fyrst booke set foorth, and evidently declared, all the inwarde partes of women (such as were necessary to be knowne to our purpose) and that not onely in wordes, but also in liuely and expresse figures, by the which every part before in the booke described, may in maner be as exactly and clearely perceiued, as though ye were present at the cutting open of Anathomie of a dead woman.

And thinke not the vtilitie and profite of this fyrst booke, and knowledge thereof to be litle or of small value, but take it as the foundation and ground, by the perceiuerance wherof, your wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe every thyng cometh to passe within your bodies in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And further, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearely perceiue the reason of many diseases which happen peculiarly to women, and the causes thereof, by which perceiuerance, agayne ye shall haue the redy vnderstanding how to withstande and remedy the sayd infirmities or diseases. For note ye wel, that as there is no man, whatsoeuer he be, that

Many thynges annexed & newlie added to this booke.

The contentes of the fyrst booke.

How profitable the fyrst booke is.

The vtilitie of y perfect knowledge of Anathomie.

B.ii.

shall

## The Prologue.

shall become an absolute and perfect Physitian, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge of all the inwardes & outwardes of mans & womans body: euen so shall ye neuer groundlye vnderstande the matters conteyned in the seconde booke, or any other communication, or wytyng, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissance in the first booke. Agayne, when that a woman cometh to a Physitian for counsell, concernyng somethyng that may be amisse in the part: the aunswere of the Physitian, and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie, is many tymes obscure, darke, and strange, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, & fashion of the inwardes. And truely when a person is sicke or diseased in any part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstand in what part the disease is, and how that part lyeth in the body. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther engin and policie, to inuent infinitely the better how the medicine should be applyed, & after the most profitable sort ministred & let to the diseased plot. To be short, all the wittnes and artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of Physicke, proceedeth & springeth of the profound knowledge of Anathomie. Therefore mine aduise & bitter counsel is, that al womē in whose handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstanding of this first booke: well

The counsaile  
of the aucthour  
to the readers.

# The Prologue.

well assuryng them that they shall not repente them of theyr small paynes bestowed in that behalfe. And to the ende that euery thing myght be the playner and more easye to attaine vnto, I haue at the latter end of the foresayd fyrst booke, set the figures which represent such matters as were entreated of in the booke before, and also haue therto annexed a sufficient declaration and exposition by letters, of all partes and parcelles conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the deliuerance or byrth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perils, & other cases happening to the labouring woman at that season, with remedies and manyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out anye medicine beyng fyrst in the olde booke, but haue in many places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisicke: and besydes this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectuall medicines, suche as either I my selfe, or other phisitions, being yet alyue at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermore, in this second booke ye may fynde diuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that needeth) or to restraine or stopp same whē they issue more largely then nature dooth requyre, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thyrde booke shalbe entreated, of the election and choyse, by certayne signes and to-

The conten-  
tes of the se-  
conde booke.

Many truly  
experimen-  
ted medici-  
nes added to  
this booke.

Things  
entreated of  
in the thirde  
booke.

## The Prologue.

kens of a good Nurse, whiche may foster and bryng by the chylde beyng borne. Item medicines encreasynge, diminyshynge, attenuatynge, engrossynge, and amendynge the mylke in the Nurses brestes. Also remedies for many and sundrye diseases, whiche oft times chaunce vnto infantes after their byrth.

What is  
conteyned in  
the fourth  
booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll some-  
what commune of conception, with the causes  
hynderynge or fartherynge the same, shewynge  
certayne counsaile and remedies whereby (by  
the grace of **GOD**) the vnfruitful may be made  
more fruitefull, and impedimentes of concepi-  
on, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouer-  
come, the woman beyng made the more apt to  
conceyue. And farther in this laste booke shall  
be vttered and sette forth certayne embellish-  
yng receiptes, concerning only honest & health-  
some decoration and clenlynesse, alwayes moste  
lowable and commendable in a woman, as to  
scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to  
keepe his naturall colour, to preferue the heere  
from fallynge away, to take away heere from  
certayne places, where beyng, it causeth some  
deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to  
subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or o-  
ther where, to remoue and to doo away spottes,  
freckens, and other suche lyke displeasaunte  
markes and tokens, to supple and molifye the  
skynne beyng rugged and rough: with other  
moe suche lyke matters. to long here to be re-  
hearsed, the whiche truly are not of anye pru-  
dent



## The Prologue.

dent person to be reiected, imprinted, or display-  
sed, forasmuche as I teache nothing in that  
place, but that only whiche may make to the ho-  
nest, comely, and commendable conceyving and  
maynteynyng of the inset and naturall beautie  
in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and despyng all  
fardynge, paintyng, and counterfeit cast colours,  
whiche of some damnable and misproude peo-  
ple be dayly vsed, suche as by all meanes possi-  
ple seeke and searce more the abhominable and  
deuillish painting & garish setting forth of their  
mortal carcases (the better thereby to commend  
it vnto the eyes of folish & fonde men) then by  
honest, sober, debonayre, & gentyll maners, so to  
demeane their lyfe, that they may thereby rather  
obteyne the loue, amitie, and hartie perpetuall  
faueur, fyrst of God, & then of all honest, discrete  
and godly wyse men. Thus nowe to be short, I  
haue in as compendious maner as the matter  
woulde suffer, set before your eyes the cheefe and  
pryncipal contentes comprehended in this litle  
volume. And now remaineth there nothing els  
but only to require the beneuolent faueur and  
good acceptation of this my labour and paynes  
spent in the compilyng of these foresayde mat-  
ters, praying, that as it hath ben to me payne-  
full in the composyng thereof, so it may be both  
pleasant and fruitefull to al women (for whose  
take & only respect it is set forth) in the reading  
thereof. Howbeit, I am not ignorant ne vnware  
that manye there are, before whose syght this  
booke shall fynde small grace, and lesse faueur.

Against  
painting of  
womens  
faces.

The bene-  
uolencie of  
the reader  
required.

## The Prologue.

Harde to please  
many iudg-  
mentes.

The maner  
of Poets in  
tymes past.

The difficultie  
to concyle the  
good wyll of  
peruert people.

So harde a thing it is to wyte or endite any matter whatsoeuer it be, that shoulde be able to sustayne and abyde the variable iudgement, and to obteyne or winne the constant loue and allowaunce of euerye man, especiallye yf it conteyne in it any noueltie or vnwont strangenes. Therefore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed, when that they enterprysed any new or strange workes, were wont in the frunte of the same, with greate protestation, to inuocate and call bypon all the goddes and goddesses by name, requiring them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and prosper their attempted purpose, to the end that by their obteyned fauour, it myght be the more acceptable and gracious to all suche as shoulde it beholde and reade, whose example ryght necessary and needeful it were that I here shoulde devoutly ensue and folowe, so that I coulde fyrst beleue that by suche maner of inuocation, myght be allured and wonne the beneuolencie and wylling fauour of all suche in whose hādes this present booke shoulde happen to fall. But truly I do suppose, that although I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye to be assistent the three louynge graces, or great Apollo, god, maister, and cheefe inuentour of the nature of all hearbes and other medicines, or Esculapius cheefe patronie and president in the worthy science of Physicke, or wittie Mercurie with his doullse and sugred eloquence, with sweete Suada, goddessse of all perswasion, with

## The Prologue.

with all other the goddes and goddesse what  
euer they bee, in whom ingenious Poetes do  
faigne to be a maiestie, myght, and power, to  
encline the hartes of men for to delyte and take  
pleasure in any suche thyng which fyrst shalbe  
by their godhead allowed and fauoured: though  
(I say) all these shoulde firmly conspyre in one  
together, and bende them vtterly to the most of  
theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and  
with their holye poetical spirite to breathe ouer  
this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people  
of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and waywarde  
wittes, that woulde (without all good reason)  
blame and improue the same, bnneth yet seene,  
and mucche lesse read. For who be they that geue  
so precipitat and headdy iudgementes in al ma-  
ner of matters, as suche (for the more parte) the  
whiche therein shall haue leaste cognoissaunce  
or knowledge, and take least payne in readyng  
or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynst  
the whiche they be mosse stoute, doughtie, and  
bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-  
lye of them, that peradventure shall here and  
there in the processe of this booke fynde any  
perticuler matters to reprove and carpe, some-  
tymes worthyllye, and sometymes otherwoyle:  
but also, yea, and that mucche more, of them  
whiche generally without all exception, shall  
condemne and vtterlye reprove all the whole  
matter: some alleagyng that it is shame, and  
other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng  
suche

The lyght  
iudgementes of  
many men.

Of them that vt-  
terly do condemne  
this booke.

## The Prologue.

Such matters to be entreated of, so playnely in our mother and bulgar language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead and the detraction of theyr wont secretes, by the detection and discoueryng whereof, men is readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the companie of women, and further, in theyr communications to ieste and bourde of womens priuities, not wont to be known of them, with diuers other suche lyke cauillations and reasons: so that theyr opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppress and vtterlye to condemne vnto darknesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth into lyght. Loe, suche is the light iudgemente of them, the which in euery thyng, whereof may ensue both good and euyl, haue alwayes theyr eyes walkyng, and firmly affyred and directed vppon the euyl, pyckyng and choosyng out the woorst of euery matter, omittynge and leauyng to speake of the beste, as the thyng whiche were nothyng to theyr purpose. If euerye thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed vppon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condemne and bannysh those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessary, woorthy, and of greatest price or estimation. For to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it may be peruerted and turned to an euyl vse, by them that be euyl and naught them selues,  
and

Answer to  
certayne ca-  
uillations.

Nothing so  
good but it  
may be a-  
bused.

## The Prologue.

and doo abuse it: ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte, but by the occasion of the abuse thereof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynd.

fyre and water be two right necessarie elementes to the vse of man, without the whiche we coulde not lyue: yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deed hath been done, and perpetrated. By fyre hath been consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreyes. By water, swallowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions. Agayne, meate

Fyre & water abused.

and drinke, to the moderate vsers thereof, dooth minister and mainteyne lyfe: And contrary, to the vnmeasurable and vnfaciat gourmaundes and gluttons, it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes, syckenesse, and at the laste death. By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr

Meat and drinke abused.

fierce enimies, the true wayfaryng man, from the assault of the theefe: Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons, Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterlye destroyed, the true mans throate by the theefe cut. The mosse

Weapons abused.

holye and sacred Wyble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour, reformation of our wicked lyuyng, and brefelye, the hygh waye to God. The blessed Sacramēt of the body & blood

The Bible abused.

of Christe Iesus was instituted and ordeined by our Sauour him selfe, for apyncipall, earnest, lyuely, and mosse present consolation and comforte

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

## The Prologue.

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holye Scripture, and also the foresayde holy Sacrament, haue been, be, and will be, the confusion, and condemnation of a great number of the abusers and indigne or vnworthy receyuers of them both. Should men, for the auoydyng all these foresayde inconueniencies, and for the reasons abouesayde, condemne and banyshe fyre and water, forsake theyr meate and drynke, suppress and forbyd all manner of weapons, abolythe and set asyde the holy Scripture, deny or vnrregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thynk it. Therefore I say, the iudgement of that eye can neuer be equall & indifferent, whiche hath more respecte and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen ( onely through the misuse of a thyng ) then to the emolumentes and profites dayly and commonly lyke to ensue to the well vsers of the same: that that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disallowed for þe sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also dooth testifye, To them that be good them selfe, every thyng turneth to good: what euer it be, is to them a sufficient matter and occasyon therinto seeke the glorie of GOD, and the only profite of their euen Chrysten. And contrary, suche as be of yll disposition, in every thyng ( be it neuer so good and salutarie ) piketh out matter of mainteynauce to theyr lewdnesse, turnyng matters of sadnesse and discretion, to foolyshe and pyuissh prating contention.

Whose  
iudgementes can  
neuer be in-  
different.

To the good  
euery thyng  
turneth to  
good.

The condi-  
tion of such  
as be yll.

Wherefore

## The Prologue.

Wherefore considering that there is nothing in this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holy, or vertuous, but that it may by wickednesse be abused, it shall be no great wonder, though this little booke also, made, written, and set forth for a good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons be vbled contrary to godlynesse, honestie, or content of the wyter thereof. The abusion of this booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth onely in these two poyntes. The one is, least that some yll disposed person shoulde wickedly abuse suche medicines as be here declared for a good purpose, to some deuyllish and lewde vse. What I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that haue vnderstandyng, right soone wyll perceiue. The second poynt is, least that this booke happening into any lyght merchauntes handes, shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuyse of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes, to the derision or ashamyng of suche women as should be in presence. &c. To these reasons can I make no better aunswere, then hath ben alleaged before. Not withstanding, yet I say that I trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke shall be so discretely diuided abroad, that none of them shall fall in any such persons handlyng.

Agayne, yf any doo chaunce to them, I am sure they wyll as soone reade this prologue, as the rest of this booke, the which thing when they shall doo, here shall they heare of me, that they be in theyr doynge neyther honest, good, ne godly, but speakyng vnreuerently, contemptuously,

Wherem this booke may be abused.

The seconde poynt.

No lyght persons shal haue any of these bookes.

## The Prologue.

Of foolysh and  
lewde talkers.

Some woulde  
that neyther ho-  
nest ne vnbonest  
shoulde haue this  
booke.

tuously and vntymely of such thynges, they do  
great iniury, dishonour, and contumely to na-  
ture: For he that declareth any thyng in man  
or woman, priuie or apert, talkyng and rehear-  
sing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his  
euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall  
and deadly synne, for so muche as contumely-  
ously he ahameth and confoundeth his euen  
Christen, wherewith he byngeth hym out of  
paciencie, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeance,  
in rehearlynge of such thynges, and after such  
sort, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere  
his mynde. Wherefore for such deedes, he shall  
not be accounted of the number of honest and  
sage persons, but of the lyght and lewde. Yet  
another sort is there, which woulde that ney-  
ther honest ne vnbonest men shoulde see this  
booke, for because (as they say) be a man neuer  
so honest, yet by reading here of thynges to them  
before vnknewen, they shall conceaue a cer-  
tayne lothsomnes and abhorryng towards a  
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe  
nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secreete, that  
they shoulde neede to care who knowe of it, ney-  
ther is there any part in woman more to be ab-  
horred, then in man. And if the knowledge of  
such thynges which commonly be called the  
womans priuities, shoulde dimynish the hartie  
loue and estimation of a woman in the mynde  
of man, then by this reason, Physitians and  
Chyrurgians wiues shoulde greatly be abhorred  
and misbeloued of theyr husbandes. And I  
my



## The Prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wyrteth this booke, shoulde marueylously aboue many other abhorre or loth women. But to be short, there is no such thyng, neyther any cause thereto why. Wherefore all such slender reasons set apart, let no woman be greued who shall see or beholde this booke: for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy, and knauysh that shall reade it, here I am sure he shal learne neither lewdenesse, vnhappinesse, ne knauerie. Howbeit, generally to all men, in whose handes this booke shal chaunce to come, I counsell and exhort, that they take not vpon them to talke of any thinges therein conteyned, but onely where it may edifie, and be assuredly well accepted.

No matter who  
readeth this  
booke.

The exhortati-  
on to all readers.

For women lyghtly wyll not gladly heare of such matters, by any man, vnlesse it be a Phisition of whom they require counsayle, or of theyr discreete husbandes. It shall be no displeasure to any honest and louyng woman, that her husbände shoulde reade such thynges: for many men there be of so gentle and louyng nature towarde theyr wyues, that they wyll be more dilygent and carefull to reade or seeke out any thyng that shoulde doo theyr wyues good, beyng in that case, then the women them selues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to interpretate and constore euery thyng herein conteyned, accordyng to the best, and to vse euery thyng herein entreated of to the purpose wherefore it was wrytten. For truely as  
for

## The Prologue.

The considera-  
tion why this  
booke was set  
foorth.

This booke set  
foorth in many  
other langua-  
ges.

for my part consydering the manyfolde, dayly,  
and imminent dangers and perylls the which  
all maner of women, of what estate or degree so  
euer they be, in theyr labours do sustayne and  
abyde, yea, many tymes with peryll of theyr lyfe  
(of the which there be to many examples, neede-  
lesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde  
be a very charitable and laudable deede, and  
ryght thankefully to be accepted of all honou-  
rable and other honest matrons, yf by my  
paynes this little treatise were made to speake  
Englyshe, as it hath been long syth taught to  
speake Dutche, frenche, Spanyshe, and dyuers  
other languages. In the whiche Countreies  
there be fewe women that can reade, but they  
wyll haue one of these bookes alwayes in rea-  
dines, where also this and other such bookes be  
as commonly sold at euery Stacionars shoppe,  
as any other booke. The same commoditie then  
and profite which they in their regions do ob-  
teyne by enioying of this lyttle booke in theyr  
maternall language, may also ensue vnto all  
women in this noble Realme of Englande, it  
beyng lyke wyse sette foorth in our Englyshe  
speeche, so that to them which diligently wyll  
aduert and geue heede to the instructions of  
this lyttle booke, it may supply the roome and  
place of a good Mydwyfe, and aduise them ma-  
ny tymes of sundry causes, chaunces, and reme-  
dyes, wherein peradventure ryght wyse wo-  
men and good Mydwyues shalbe full ignorant.

And

# The Prologue.

And truely (as I haue been credibly enformed by diuers persons worthy to be beleued) there be syth the fyrst setting forth of this booke, right many honourable Ladyes, & other worthypfull Gentlewomen, which haue not disdayned the oftener by the occasion of this booke, to frequent and haunt women in theyr labours, carrying with them this booke in theyr handes, and causyng such part of it as doth chiefly concerne the same purpose, to be read before the Mydwyfe, and the rest of the women then being present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith the labouryng woman hath been greatly comforted, and alleuiated of her thronges and traualle: whose laudable example and dooynges, woulde GOD that many proude Mydwyues woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche, as there be many ryght expert, dyligent, wyse, circumspect and tender about such businesse as appertayneth to theyr office: So be there agayne many mo full vndiscrete, vnrasonable, chortlysh, and farre to seeke in such thynges, the which shoulde chiefly helpe and succour the women in theyr most paynefull labour and thronges, through whose rudenesse and rashnesse onely, I doubt not but that a great number of women in their labour speede worse then needed otherwyse. But here now let not the good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is spoken of the badde. For verily there is no science, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beares,

C. i. and

How Ladyes and Gentlewomen haue used this booke.

In trying of natur's curiouse to secure  
 M. gene. & Apo. From Ladye nothing perillous  
 The firste history of Spite to good our soure

Of Mydwyues

In every science there be of all sortes.

## The Prologue.

Some Wyd-  
wyues woulde  
haue had this  
booke forbidden.

The false sar-  
nises of the  
maleuolent.

The good  
Wydwyues  
were glad of  
this booke.

and Asses, which as aboue all other haue most neede of information and teaching, so most commonly agayne, more then any other, wyll they kycke and wynce agaynst such as woulde them reforme or reduce to any better way then they haue ben accustomed to in tymes past. And this do I say, for because that at the fyrst commyng abroad of this present booke, many of this sort of Wydwyues, moued eyther of enuie, or els of mallice, or both, diligented and endeuoured them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to fynde the meanes to suppress and abrogate the same, makyng all women of theyr acquaintaunce (whom they thought to haue any knowledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng woorth, and that it shoulde be a flander to women, forsomuche as therein was descried and set forth the secretes and priuities of women, and that euery boy and knaue hadde of these bookes, readyng them as openly as the tales of Robin hood. &c. The which sayinges, as they were false, and vnttrue, and malicious allegati- ons onely of euyl harted persons, to whom it was great grieffe, that any by readyng thereof, shoulde see or vnderstande more then they had knowledge of before: So is it very soothe and true, that ryght diuers of the better and more sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and verye desyrous to haue of them, and gaue faythfull counsaile also vnto women of theyr famulier knowledge, to heare the booke read by some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it  
them

# The Prologue.

them selues. whose honest and vertuous indu-  
stry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and de-  
serue the laude and prayse of all them that be  
laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthy and  
byle ingratitude and dispituous enuie of the  
maleuolent, to be detested and vtterly abhorred  
of all people: whose malignaunt wittes, yf  
they myght preuayle of theyr purpose, woulde  
sley the good courages of all honest interpre-  
ters, in those matters and all other. And

Envy and un-  
thankfulnes to  
be abhorred.

thus I conclude and make an ende

of this rude Prologue, requir-  
ing the gentle readers

therof, that yf they

shall fynde any

thing ther

in inter-

pretable to diuers senses, to ac-

cept onely that which may

make to the best, accor-

ding to my mea-

nyng.

C. it.

## The first booke.

**I**n this first Chapter is briefly  
declared the contentes of the  
first booke.



The title of  
the first booke

Although that many things  
entreated of in this  
first booke, shal seeme unto  
some not very necessary to  
the vnderstandyng of the  
seconde booke, yet then contrary do I  
ensure and certifie (as I haue suffici-  
ently sayd in the Prologue) that the ig-  
norant in the first, shalbe full blynde  
in the seconde, to the which the first is  
as a key, opening and clearing the mat-  
ters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The contentes  
of this booke.

In this first booke then shalbe decla-  
red the fourme, maner, and situation of  
the inwarde partes of a woman, suche  
as are in them by nature dedicate and  
assigned to the propagation, concepti-  
on, and bearyng of mankinde. In who  
truelly is the receptacle, & as ye woulde  
say, the campe or feelde of mankynde to  
be engendred therein. And although  
that

that man be as principall moouer and  
 cause of the generation: yet (no displea-  
 sure to men) the woman doth conferre  
 and contribute muche more, what to  
 the encrease of the chylde in her  
 wombe, and what to the nourishment  
 thereof after the byrth, then doth the  
 man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde  
 demaunde to whom the chylde oweth  
 most his generation: He may worthily  
 make aunswere, that to the mother,  
 whether ye regarde the paynes in bea-  
 ryng, other els the conferrence of most  
 matter in begetting.

The woman  
 conferreth more  
 the generation  
 then man.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall  
 reade certayne thyngs, which in times  
 passed haue ben corruptly, negligently,  
 yea and very falsely wrytten of, and of  
 the which both men, yea and women  
 them selues, haue conceiued very erro-  
 nious and misopinions, as ye shall far-  
 ther perceiue in the processe.

Many thinges  
 falsely wrytten  
 in times past.

Now therefore that we come to the  
 declaration of the Organs generatiue  
 in womā, it shalbe necessary to the bet-

The first booke.

ter vnderstanding therof, fyrst to shew  
the Description of certayne thynges,  
Without whose knowledge, this trea-  
tise would be many times the more ob-  
scure and darke.

**I**n howe many coates the body is  
lapped or inuolued. Cap. ii.

The principall  
coates of the  
body.



The body of man or wo-  
man is inuolued or com-  
passed vniuersally with  
three principal coates.

Of the whiche the fyrst  
and vttermost is called the skynne, in  
Latine Cutis, with whom generally  
euery part of the body is clad and inclo-  
sed, the which yet in some part is more  
softe, delycate, and thinne, then in some  
other, and in some one person more  
stowre and styffe, then in some other a-  
gayne, for causes needelesse here to be  
rehearsed.

The superficial  
skynne.

And ye shall note, that vpon the out-  
warde face and superficie of this skyn,  
there is yet another thinner skynne, in  
Latine



Latine commonly named Cuticula, & of  
 some Efflorescentia cutis. This thyn skyn  
 is it, the which ye see rise lyke a bladder  
 when any part of the body is blistered  
 with fire or hot water, so that betwene  
 this thynne skin and the very skinne, is  
 contained the water which resorteth to  
 the place by the violence of the fyre or  
 heate, the which thyn skin also we vse to  
 pricke to let the water issue forth: also  
 the same that skalet or pylleth of the  
 hands or other parts of the body being  
 scabbed & begynnyng to dry. Item, the  
 skin that the Adders do cast in the som-  
 mer tyme, is the foresayd thyn superfici-  
 all skin, & not the very substantiall skin  
 of the body in deede. For the very skin  
 neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great  
 violēce, as by flaying, like as beastes be  
 flaine at the butchers, & as they flay co-  
 nies. And againe the thyn or superficial  
 skin, skale it or fal it of neuer so often, yet  
 in the place of it is reingendred new, as  
 good alwayes as the former. But yf  
 the second and very skin be perished, by  
 cutting

The very skin  
 skalet not of.

## The first booke.

The very skyn  
perished is ne-  
uer restored.

cutting or apostumation, or by other casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his olde perfection agayne, but shall the we alwayes in the place where it is, as it were a seame, skarre, or marke, smoth, and harder then the other skynne, and without naturall powers.

The seconde  
coate.

The fleshy skin.

The seconde inuestiture or clothyng of the body, is named the fleshy skyn, in Latin Membrana carnosā, so called, for because that it conteyneth and is compassed of fleshynges, then any other kell or skyn in all the body, & is as it were the lynnyng to the fore sayd Cutis, that is, the very skyn immediatly aboue hym, the very skin and it being both basted together, by a great number of smal fybres or cords enterlacing these two skynnes, so that with great payne vnieth may they be separated the one frō the other. And farther, betweene these two skins runne a great number of baynes, artires, and sinnaues, in euery part of the body, so that the great baynes whiche appeare so manifestly to your syght in  
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betweene the proper skinne and the fleshy skinne, this being to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thyrde coate of the body, is the fatte, in Latin Adeps, the whiche doth so generally in euery part of the body inuolue & wrap the same, as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman being in any reasonable lykynge, it is founde in euery part (except felwe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places nedeleffe here to be resited, and doth entercurre & runne betweene the two foresayd skynnes, receyuyng & embracyng in it selfe the small bastynge fibres, the vaynes, artires, and sinnes, which (as I sayd before) be deriued from the one skin to the other: And the greater foison of fat that there is betweene the two skinnes, the lesse be the vaynes intercurryng betweene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance  
of

The thyrde  
coate, is the  
fatte.

Store of fatte  
letteth the sheete  
of the vaynes.

The first booke.

of fat drawyng & coueryng the great-  
nes of them) the which also in the selfe  
same place of a leaner or sparer person,  
shalbe seene very great, and as it were  
swollen baynes, in comparison of the  
fatter. Itē, vnderstand ye that in some  
part of the body, naturally fatnes doth  
abound much more then in other some,  
as in the belly lyghly the fatte is two  
fyngers thicke & more: and in women  
that be meanely fat, in the thyes & but-  
tockes this fatte is of thre, yea foure  
fyngers thynnes, which (as I sayd a-  
boue) always hath his place betweene  
the foresayd two skynnes.

Fatte in some  
part, more then  
some.

What is con-  
teyned next un-  
der the fleshy  
skynne.

Now immediatly vnder the fleshy  
skin, be conteyned the Muskles of the  
body, so that the inner face or superficie  
of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth  
the muskles, is alwaies bedewed with  
a certayne slimy moysture, by whiche  
meanes the foresayd Muskles moving  
and stirring vnder the sayd fleshy skin,  
be the freer, & haue the lesse impedimēt  
or let in theyr motion, & very easie it is  
to

to seperate this skin frō the Muskles.

Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap. iiii.



The muskles of mans body be called the moouing cordes and fleshye strynges whereby any member of the body is mooued to or fro, vpward or downeward, or turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, or otherwise do moue either of your handes, and in closyng or moouyng it with the other hande doo feele the Wryste of that hande, ye shall sensibly perceyue as it were certayne cordes mouing vnder the skynne, the whiche be called Muskles, in latine Musculi. To discusse curiously the nature or occasyon of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here is it sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wheresoeuer there is great store of Muskles, and chiefly in the myddle parte of them, there is also great plentye of flesh, enterlardyng

What is meant  
by the name of  
Muskles.

The first booke.

The Muskles  
entermingled  
with fleshe.

lardyng & entermynglyng it selfe with  
the Muskles, & as it were combinding,  
colligatyng, or knittyng togeather the  
Muskles, not so yet, but that neuerthe-  
lesse they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the body left a-  
part and vnmentioned of, here wyll I  
only declare a litle of the Muskles of  
the belly, forasmuch as theyr operation  
is sometymes conferent and appertay-  
ning to the matters that we entend of.

The Muskles  
of the belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the belly,  
next vnder the fleshy kel or skin, be.iiii.  
Muskles, eche situate and set vnder o-  
ther, of the whiche, the vppermost im-  
mediately touchyng the fleshy skyn, be  
called the Byaswyle descendyng Mus-  
kles, in Latin Musculi obliqui descendentes.  
Of these Muskles there be two, in ech  
syde of the belly one, so that these two  
Byaswyle descendyng Muskles meete  
together in the middle region of the  
belly, & be extended or spread ouer al the  
amplitude of the belly, shaping thereto  
as it were an other coate.

The

The second Muskles be named the byaswyle ascendyng Muskles, in Latin, Musculi obliqui ascendentes, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the first, in ech syde or coast of the belly is there one.

The third sort of the belly Muskles, as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in latin, Musculi recti, which be double as the other two before.

The ryght Muskles.

The fourth be nominated the ouerthwart Muskles, in Latin, Musculi transuersi, because they transuerse or ouerthwart the belly. In ech side likewise of whom, ther is one of these Muskles, which in the middle line of the belly encounter eche other, as I haue sayde of the aboue named three Muskles, so that the byaswyle ascendyng, and the byaswyle descendyng, with the ouerthwart Muskles, do ech of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the belly, but so do not the ryght Muskles,

The ouerthwart Muskles.

The first booke.

The vse of the  
four belly  
Muscles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but  
small in comparison of the other. All  
these foure Muscles be to the entrailes  
and bowels within the belly, as foure  
seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe  
of whom, together with the ayde of  
the midriffe, al expulsion both vpward  
and downeward in the guttes, in the  
stomacke, in the matrix of the woman  
in the tyme of labour, and also in the  
bladder in tyme of making of water,  
is wrought, and yet besydes this vtily-  
tie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) de-  
fende, fortifie, & strength the inwards  
of the belly.

Of the Bell, called Peritoneum.

Capit. iiii.



nder the last Muske of the  
belly, called the ouerthwarte  
Muske, immediatly succee-  
deth a certayne thin rime, kel,

The Perito-  
neum and his  
office.

or skin, named in latin, Peritoneum, whi-  
che compasseth rounde the amplitude  
and



and largeour of the belly, takyng his originall at the bynders of the loyne bones, and from thence dilatyng and spreadyng it selfe abroade, vnderlyneth the ouerthwart Muskles, the midriffe, & part of the short ribbes. To be short, this rime vnderlyneth all the whole cavitie, holonesse, or amplitude of the bellye, from the midriffe to the flankes or share, immediatly contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe all the whole contentes of the belly, euen as the skin next vnder the shell of an egge enuironeth and compasseth immediatly all the contayned meate of an egge. And as for Peritoneum, doth not only enuolue all the entrayles of the belly in his compasse, but also yeeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate and webbe of the cloth of his owne bodie, by the which his liuery, they be the more arctly & straightly affixed or fastened vnto him selfe, and farther in them selues the stronger within the cavitie of the belly: and vnder this Peritoneum, be contayned these bowels folowynge.

First

The vse and  
profite of the  
Peritoneum.

The first booke.

Bowles contel-  
ued vnder the  
Peritoneum.

First the stomacke, which is the first receptacle and receiuer of the foode or meate chawed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the winde pype, downe along the stomacke gat, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin Omentum, the liuer, the spleene or melt, the bladder, & the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes the kydneys, the maister vayne, and the maister arteire. But here we shal begin first to en- treat of the matrix, as the part which maketh chiefly to our purpose.

The declaration of the names  
and nature of the Matrix.

Capit. v.

Diuers names  
of the Matrix.

**H**ere ye shall vnderstand, that these thre words, the Matrix, the Mother, and the wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say, The place wherein the seede of man is conceived, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the time  
of

of Deliueraunce, in Latin named Vterus & Matrix. The necke of thys wombe, o-  
therwyse called the womans priuie, we wyll call the wombe passage, or the  
priuie passage; in Latin Ceruex vteri, & pu-  
dendum muliebre: the extreme end, or y<sup>e</sup> fyrst  
entraunce of this priuie or wombe pas-  
sage, ye shall name the passage port: for  
because that it is the port gate, or en-  
traunce of that passage, or way into the  
wombe or matrix: in Latin. Vulua. i. Valua.

The wombe passage, the or the necke  
of the wombe, taketh his beginning at  
the passage porte, and from thence sty-  
eth and mounteth ryght vpwarde vnder  
the sharebone like a great conduit,  
varying in length & bredth accordinge  
to the age of the woman.

To make especyall mentyon of the  
length of this wombe passage, were but  
follye, for the diuersities thereof. Not-  
withstandynge in women it is esteemed  
of the length of. x. xi. xii. or. xiii. fingers  
bredth, some more, some lesse. And thys  
we maye saye that nature hath so pro-

D. i.

wyded.

The necke of  
the Matrix.

uyded that it is of sufficient length, to receaue the priuie part of manne, in the generation, directinge the same towar- des the wombe port, thozow the which the seede is naturally sent from the man into the wombe oz mother, thereto hel- ping an attractife power, which is in- let and geuen to the wombe, to attracte and drawe towar des it selfe the seede parted from the man (so that there bee no other let.)

Of the wombe and his partes. Capi. vi.



**A** the head oz vpper ende of this wombe passage, is sytu- ate the wombe it selfe, which in women (beyng not with chyld) is verye lyttle, contract and dra- wen together: so that the amplitude oz largenes therof, passeth not the amply- tude and largenes of the priuie passage, the which thing to some may seme vn- credible, yet by Anathomye ye may see it  
to

The wombe of  
Patric in wo-  
men not with  
chld contracto.

to be true. And for all this contraction, or drawing so nere together of the Matrix, the outsyde of it is very smoothe, moyst, glysteryng, and reddyshe, as it were a little redde tempered with a great deale of whyte, the insyde also of the Matrix is smooth: yea, & though that the Matrix, as we haue said, be ful of riuels & wrinkles, by the reason that it is so contract frō a great amplitude or largenes (as may be seen in the wombe or Matrix of women with chylde) to this little compasse, yet may a boddy scarce perceiue in this inner side any wrinkle, (albeit that there be infinite) they be so finely and neere drawn togeather.

This contraction of the Matrix, no doubt, was made by nature, for these causes, partely that at suche tyme that the woman is not with chylde, it should occupye the lesse roome in the bellye: but chye flye that in tyme of conception of the seede, the lyttle bolke or quantitie of the sayde seede, at hys fyrst conceauynge into the womans

The cause of  
the contraction  
of the Matrix.

Mother, may be touched rounde about  
 euery where of the mother: and as ye  
 woulde say, amplexed or embraced, and  
 containned (as the nut shell containeth  
 immediatly the nut) of the inner walles  
 or face of the matrix: and as the seede is  
 viuified, shapred, and doeth encrease, so  
 doeth the amplitude of the matrix en-  
 large and waxe bygger: so that at the  
 last when the infant cometh to his full  
 groweth, or when the woman is great  
 with chylde: then this coate or kelle of  
 the Matrix is as thinne as a bladder,  
 where that in tyme of his contraction,  
 or when the woman is not with childe,  
 the coate or walle of the Matrix is as  
 good as halfe an inch thicke.

Howe the Ma-  
 trix varieth the  
 thicknes and  
 thynnes of his  
 coate.

The forme of  
 the Matrix.

Nowe ye shall vnderstande, that the  
 founde or botome of the matrix is not  
 perfectly round bowlyse, but rather  
 lyke the forme of a mans harte, as it is  
 paynted, sauinge that the partition or  
 clifte in the matrix betwene both cor-  
 ners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so  
 profoundly dented inwarde as the  
 clift

clyfte in the harte: For in the inwarde  
 vault, cauitie, or holonesse of the ma-  
 trix, there is a certayne seame, whiche  
 begynnyng in the middle of the fore-  
 part of the matrix, at the wombe port,  
 doth passe forth by that foreside, & so by  
 the bottome to the hynder syde of the  
 matrix, & from thence along downe to  
 the wombe port on the backsyde, as ye  
 may more evidently see in the figure  
 hereof. This seame then is as it were a  
 litle seperation, marke, or limit, diu-  
 dyng the wombe in two equall partes  
 or sydes, the ryght and the lefte: Not-  
 withstandyng, in the matrix there is  
 but one vault, cauitie, holonesse, or am-  
 plitude, the forsayde seame beyng but  
 as it were a note, signe, or scace sensi-  
 ble marke running along the sydes and  
 botome of the wombe. But this seame  
 or line where it passeth the bottome of  
 the mother or wombe, is more crasse,  
 thicke, and fleshye, propendyng, hel-  
 ding, hangyng, or lokyng downeward  
 into the vaulte or amplitude of the

A certayne  
 seame beuiddyn g  
 the Matrix as  
 it were in two  
 partes.

In the Matrix  
 but one holo-  
 nesse.

The first booke.

Wombe, the whiche lyne in the sydes is  
nothyng so manyfeste ne sensible to be  
perceyued. Thus ye may see, that the  
myddle part of the bottome of the Ma-  
trix, is not so hye as the two comers or  
angles on both sydes be. Other distinc-  
tions or separations in the Matrix is  
there none, albeit that in tymes passed,  
diuers Clarkes haue wrytten, & many  
other haue beleued, that there should  
be seuen selles, or seuen distinct places in  
the matrix, in thre of the which on the  
ryght syde, shoulde onely men chyldren  
be conceaued, and in the other thre on  
the left syde women chyldren: and yf it  
chaunced that the seede were conceiued  
in the seuenth sell, which was the mid-  
delmoste, then that shoulde become a  
monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman.  
The which al is but lyes, dreames, and  
fonde fantasies. For the womans ma-  
trix, as I haue said, is euen as a strong  
bladder, havyng in it but one vniuersal  
holoneste, and the chyldre when it lyeth  
in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more  
then

Certaine  
erronious opini-  
ons of vii.  
selles in the  
wombe.



then on the other, the head being to-  
wardes one of the corners or angles, &  
not vpryght toward the middle brydge.

The matrix  
hath but one  
holmes.

Of the mother port. Cap. vi.



The entrance  
of the matrix  
or wombe, is  
named the  
womb port or  
mother port,  
the whiche in  
substaunce &  
fassion muche  
doth resemble

Of the mother  
port, the situa-  
tion thereof.

the foume of an haukes bel, or other li-  
tle moyses bels, sauing that it is muche  
bigger, having a clift ouerthwart the  
body thereof, as ye may more playnly  
perceiue by the figure hereof. And this  
port of the matrix is of substaunce more  
thicke & crasse then the rest of the same,  
& as it were a kernel, round & clift in the  
middest. This womb port also is faste-  
ned & affixed to the vpper end of y<sup>e</sup> womb  
passage, as all the rest of the wombe is.

## The first booke.

Howe be it, the middle parte of the Wombe port, or the snout therof, where it bosseth downward, doth touche no side nor part of the Wombe passage, but onlye holdeth pendante wyse, or loketh downward: and where as at suche tyme that the man companyeth with the woman, the priuie passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priuie part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clyft of the Wombe port is not moued thereby, ne dilated: excepte that it be at suche tyme that the matrix beyng apt and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this Wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the Wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The womb  
wel disposed  
naturally  
attracteth the  
seede.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceived in at this Wombe port, it doth not alwayes remayne there, but many tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place or in the seede it selfe. Albeit yf the seede be  
retayn

retayned styll in the matrix, then doeth the wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat without violence, and so doth remayne vntyl the tyme of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it dilateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is wonderfull to speake of.

The closnes of the matrix after the seebe ceased.

**O**f the vessels of seebe, called the stones, with other therto appertayning.  
Cap. viii.



If eche syde of the matrix lieth a stone, which both be called the womans stones, wherein is ingendred the seebe & sparne that cometh from the woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seebe of man, but rather weake, fluy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmite: howbeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the whiche it was ordeyned, as the seebe of man for his

The first booke.

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, muche fashioned after the shape of a greate and brode almond. The substance and bodye of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe, as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kernelles sette together, betweene the which is much holonesse, and they in conteyned a certayne thinne watery substance. This substance of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thinne skynne, very firmly annexed to the foresayde substance, which also doch receiue into hym selfe the seede bryngers. We may name the same coate in Latin *Supergeminalis*.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

Of the seede  
bryngers.



The seede bryngers, called in Latin *Vasa semē adferentia*, be two vaines & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one vaine & one artire, and take they beginnyng

nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes ( as ye may see in the figures hereof ) be situate the great maister vayne, in Latine *Cava Vena*, and the great artire, *Arteria magna*. The maister vayne hath his originall of the liver, from whence it descendeth downeward along the loynes, untill it attayne vnto the begynnyng of *Os sacrum*, where the artire ( as the Worthyer ) begynneth to mount vppon the maister vayne, and in this place they both diuide them selues in two partes forke wyse, the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the right thygh and legge, the lefte, into the lefte legge, the vayne euermore associate with the artire, the whiche hath his beginnyng of the hart, from whence he is descended through the midwyffe to this place, distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The office of the great vayne is, to conduct and cary from the liver ( which is the blood shoppe, where the blood is engendred )

The originall  
of the great vayne

The office of  
the vayne.

## The first booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye blood, therewith to nozyshe them. For to the great bayne where they passe, there commeth innumerable smal baynes on euery syde, euen as to the great riuers many smal streames on euerye syde do resort.

The office of  
the artires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade abroad in the body the vitall and lyue-lye spyryte, engendred in the bosome of the harte, and to refreshe and temper the immoderate heate whiche other- wyse mought be ingendred in the bodye, the whiche also sleape we or wake we, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulse, and loke after what manner the hart (whiche is the well of these artires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and euen so do they.

The hart and  
artires haue  
two contrary  
motions.

The hart then, and the artires thorow him, haue two contrary motions: one is, in closyng it selfe, and the other, in dilatynge and openyng of it selfe, whiche sorte of mouynges, we call the beatyng.

beating of the pulces, When the artires do open themselves, then they attract, draw, or suck in fresh ayre, to temper the heate of the body withall, and also spirituall and thin pure blood. But when they close themselves, then do they expel misty fumes, and hotte breathes, or vnaturall vapoures, suche as of necessitie alwayes be ingendred in all partes of the body, by the whiche blood doeth passe, for causes to long here to be alleaged: nether is there any notable vayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the right side and forepart of the great vaine proceedeth a braunche, deriued from that place a longe the loines downewardes to the head of the ryghte stone: from the ryghte syde lyke wyse and foreface of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great vayne downe towardes the right loynes, where it meting with the foresayde vayne braunche, before they emplant them selfe in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here strayght

The meeting of  
the vayne and  
artyre.

The fyrst booke.

strayght enlarging themselves, lytle and lytle, stepelwyse, not fully rounde, but flattysh before and behynde, with the broder ende plantynge & infixing themselves into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende where this bayne braunche and artyze braunch do fyrst meete, they begynne to entermyngle, embrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wyse, wythynge & deuidinge themselves in thousandes of lytle braunches, as it were hayres of the head, the one embrasyng, compassynge and ouerthwharting the other so confusedly, that no wyt can expresse the ryghte maner and order of their commixtion. Cal this part then in Englysh, the braded body, in Latin Vari-  
cosoformem plexum: whose nether and broder ende, as I sayde before, affyred and implanted in the vpper head of the right stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfolde wyse dyspersed, spred, and commyxt.

The braded  
body.

And



And also into the skyn or couer of the stone, called before *Supergeminalis*, from the sayd braded bodye, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the lyttle small baynes whiche ye see reddish in a mans eye.

And looke what description and pro-  
cesse, we haue made of the ryghte syde  
seede bringers, to the ryght stone, euen  
the same vnderstande of the lefte syde  
seede bringers to the left stone, sauynge  
that the bayne braunche whiche com-  
meth to the left stone, mooste commonly  
taketh his original of the nether side of  
the left kidney bayne, and not immedi-  
atly of the great bayne as the other.

And ye shal vnderstand agayne, that  
from the foresaid vaine & artire of eche  
syde at the place, where theyz fyrst con-  
iunction or meting is, proceadeth a cer-  
tayne braunche of the bayne, assoiate  
with the artyre, which both passe forth  
together to the found or bottome of the  
Mother or Matrix, of that syde where  
they stande, there delatynge and sprea-  
dyng

Baynes deriued  
to the botom of  
the Matrix.

Dynge themfelfe abroade in manyfolde  
fmaller branches, to the nouryfhment  
of the body of the matrix.

Of the offyce and vfe of thefe feede  
bryngers. Capit. x.

The feede pro-  
create of the  
vayne blood  
and the artire.  
all blood.

**T**hrough thefe feede bryngers,  
blood out of the vaynes, and  
vively fpirit out of the artires  
be deryued, yea, or rather (to  
fpeake more properly) attract or dra-  
wen into the ftone, there by vertue and  
natural inftinction of the place altered  
and chaunged, beyng fyrft confused to-  
gether the blood and the fpirite, by mu-  
tuall amplexations or embracements  
of thefe two vefselles, the vayne and the  
artyre beyng conioyned and vnite in  
one very body, fyrft begynnynge in the  
bradyd body, and the after in the whole  
bodye of the ftone: So that thoroowe  
the manyfolde and infinite circulaty-  
ons of the attracted matter by the con-  
duyctes or vaynes infinitely intricate  
and

and Wrythed With a thousand reuolu-  
tions or turagaynes (and all in the litle  
compasse of the body of the stones) the  
blood and spirite commixed togeather,  
getteth another nature and propertie  
both in colour and in effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that  
most commonly alwayes When that  
nature is disposed to make a transmu-  
tation of any matter, that can she not  
do, vnlesse she haue a mine, shoppe, or  
wozkehouse, wherein by continual cir-  
culatiō of the matter transmutable, she  
may bryng her purpose to passe. Euen  
as mettalles and other minerals of the  
earth, haue theyz secrete and vuisible  
baynes, in whiche by dayly and long  
coagitation, mouyng, circulation, and  
hurling together, they be brought from  
one forme to another, & made metals  
of that which before was none.

Of these sort of mines, there be foure  
principall in the body of man.

The first is the mine of blood, which is  
the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,

E. i.

before

Note the ingin  
and politic of  
nature.

Foure mines in  
mans body.

The first booke.

before of colour Whyte, is transmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nourishe all partes of the body, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thoroowe very small and infinite lytle baynes into the lyuer.

The hart is the  
seconde mine.

The second mine is the hart, which of the blood attract and drawen from the great maister bayne, procedyng out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlors, doth engender vehement & liuely spirite, commixed with depured & greatly elaborated blood, within the selles of the hart, from thence sent forth thoroow the artires, into all partes of the body, being in colour yealowysh, thinne and hotte blood.

The brayne the  
thyrde mine.

The thyrde mine is the brayne, of whom all the sinewes take their originall. In whom the wyttie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of all sensibilitie be engendred, and thoroow the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all such partes as moue and feele, haue that by reason of sinewes deriued

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones, in whō  
by conuixtion of al the other thre fore-  
said metalles of the body, that is to say,  
vayne blood, arteriall blood, and liuely  
spirits engendred in the head, is engen-  
dred & porduced seede, which bestowed  
in his due place, becommeth like a per-  
fection to the creature from whence it  
came, that is to say, of mankind, man.

The fourth  
mine is the  
stones.

But ye shall vnderstand, that the re-  
ceyuyng of the seede into the stones, is  
not that there should be any one onely  
caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, or parter  
in the body of the stone, wherein it  
myght be receyued and retayned, lyke  
as the holownes of an egge, the meate  
beyng out of it, or of an hasell nutte, the  
kernell out of it, but farre other wyse:  
for the stones (chiefly in man more then  
in woman) be massife, not hard, but di-  
licate & soft, as a soft kernell, full of smal  
and almost vnsensible whyte vaynes,  
reuoluing them selfe in and out a thou-  
sand folde, and manifolde wise intricat

How the seede  
is receyued into  
the stones.

The first booke.

together, within the which the seede is conueyed, caryed, concocted, or digested and altered, by vertue of the white flesh, which intercurreth and intermingleth it selfe euery where betweene the foresayd vaine, like as the earth doth intercurre and intermingle it selfe betweene and among the small fibres, beards, or heares of rootes. The whyte coate also or walles of the said vaines, helping not a litle to the transmutation of the colour from red to whyte.

Howe the  
coloure of the  
seede is trans-  
muted.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the seede is, receyueth alwayes a nature of the place, mine, or conduite, by which it runneth and passeth, so that when the conduite is very smal and narrowe, and long withal, then the liquour that passeth through it, receyueth & sauoureth so much the more the nature and condition of that vessell or conduite. As for an example: If there were a conduite or pipe made of lead, whose length were ten foote, and the inner compasse, holonesse, or cavitie of the same, but so much  
that

Liquid thinges  
saoure of the  
nature of the  
vessel thow  
which it run-  
neth.

that an heere myght passe through it: then say I, that a gallon or quart of water passing and thrallyng through that narrow conduite shoulde saour much more of the nature and qualitie of lead, then though the holownesse of the aforesayde conduite, beyng styll of the abouenamed length, were so large that a bowle myght enter and passe thozow the same. For this reason, that when the water hath to passe thozowe so narrow passage, it maketh y longer iourney, and yeeldeth the smaller thread or streen, & therefore is touched more immediately and intyrelly of the insydes or inner walles of the conduite. And further, well ye wote that a lytle quantitie is sooner ouercome and altered, then a great. As a spoone full of wine standing all nyght in a pewter or brasen pot, shal saour muche more of the potte, then a pynte of the same. Likewyse, yf a man woulde coole hot drynke by pouryng of it out of one pot or cup into another, sooner and more perfectly shall the cir-

A lytle quantitie  
sooner ouercome  
then a greater.

## The first booke.

The policie of  
nature.

The transmu-  
tation of blood  
into sparrie.

constant colde ayre alter and coole it,  
beyng poured out very softly, makynge  
therof a fine and smal streene, then yf he  
dyd the same hastely. And truly this  
engine and pollicie doth nature vse in  
euery part where she causeth any nota-  
ble transmutation, makynge the matter  
transmutable to passe through long  
straighes & narrow turagayne lanes,  
the matter bowynge, enclynynge, and  
aptyng it selfe alwayes to the dispositi-  
on and nature of the vesselles thoro we  
which it cooleth or runneth, so that the  
sparrie or seede of man or woman, being  
attracted by the foresaid seede bringers  
into the stones, passeth by many narrow  
straighes, which beyng before bayne  
blood and artire blood, by vertue of the  
places through which it had to passe,  
becommeth from red colour to whyte,  
& of much more perfection then it was  
before. For this transmutation of blood  
into sparrie, is not only in colours, but  
also in properties and absolute perfecti-  
on. What greater wonder or miracle is  
there,



there, wherein we may knowledg and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consyder how that of the meate and drynkk which we dayly do eate, by digestiō first of the stomacke, the fine iuice therof is seperated from the drisse and grosser part: & then after at the seconde hande, the foresayde iuice passyng thorow the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thoro we infinite smial baynes, there transmuted into blood, from the lyuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the which the hart drawyng part, transmutedeth certayne therof into Artire blood. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the artire blood, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparne: which sparne bestowbed and conceived where it should be, becommeth mankynd.

This foresaid feede, as we said before, is nothyng so firme, perfect, absolute & mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not call this any imperfection or lacke in woman: for the woman in her

How meate and drynke is transmuted into blood.

The seede in woman, not so firme as in man

The first booke.

kind, and for the office & purpose wherefore she was made, is even as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neither is woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtier and strong, the woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the horse, the Lion, the Dolyphant, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, compar yng one man to another, suche as be gelded & want the genitozies, be much feebler, weake, & effeminate, then other: in voyce womanlyke, in gesture & condition nice, in softnes of skin and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength & force impotent, nothing manly ne bolde, the which imbecilitie in them, may well be named imperfection. For imperfection is, when that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie which commonly by nature

is

Altho be vnperfecter the one then the other.

is in all other, or the more part of that kynd, comparing it to other of the same kynd, and not of an other kynd.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Now shall I declare what becommieth of the seede beyng thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

¶ Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the Angles and corners of the Matrix. Cap. xi.



**A**t the lower end and foote or base of the braded body, where it is infixed and planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone

ther is the begynnyng of another vessel, whiche may be called the seede caryer, in Latine Vas semen deferens, whose body is whyte and hardyth, like an harde sinew. And from that part where it taketh his begynnyng, it passeth

Of the seede caryers.

## The first booke.

seth downwardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more exprelye perceiue in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remountyng bywarde, creeping along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come & attayne in maner to the middle region of the stone on that side, all the way as it creepeth, firmly fastned and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasten them selues to the walles, by which they creepe.

The belly and inner syde of the foresaid seede carrier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe: from the beginning and head of this vessell, to this later ende, in maner of equal corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yeele whē they slide fast or hastily, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or wreathes.

Wreathes nere ioyned together: howbeit, these Wreathes be not so frequent and thicke in the Woman as in the man. Therefore this part of the seede carriers may be called the Worme, in Latin, *Corpus lumbricosū*, for because that it hath many conuolutions, as Wormes lying together haue.

Of the part called the worme.

And if ye be disposed to seperate this forenamed Worme from the face of the stone with a sharpe knyfe, ye shall perceyue no maner of holonelle or cavitie of vaine or other cōduite: but as it were a ruggednesse, by reason of separation from the partie to whom it was before so surely annexed. And yet no doubt, there is verily in it cavitie and holownesse, by and thoroowe the which seede is caried into the angles of the Matrix. Nowe then when this foresayd Wormie body hath attayned to the myddle region (as it were) of the stone, it beginneth to depart from the bodye of the stone, and is no more (as it was before) thicke

## The first booke.

thicke wreathed, but playne, smothe, & round like a round sine w, With an vn- sensible holonesse, departyng from the stone along the inside of the belly ouer- thwarting the guttes, to the angle or corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it proceede from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not strayght or forthryght, but somewhat bowyng & crooking it selfe in two or three crookes by the way. These seede caryers recey- ueth the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones and foresaid seede byngers, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they whiche do open dead women, shall al- wayes perceiue in the holownes of the Matrix these two angles or corners specially bedeaWed or imbued with a whyte slimy and thynne cleare mat- ter, whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in women hauyng great  
and

and feruent desire to any man, this seede doth issue from this foresayde place, doWne along to the womans priuy passage, moystring al that part, as it were with a dewe. Aristotle and other mo, do suppose that this seede in woman, serueth for no other purpose, but onely to recite, moue, and styre the woman to pleasure. But some peradventure would thinke that this were but a simple & an idle or slender purpose, which if they dyd more nerely consider the matter, should perceiue it to be a iust, great, and necessary cause. For if that the god of Nature had not instincted, and inset in the body of man and woman, such a vehement and ardent appetite & lust, the one lawfully to company with the other, neyther man ne woman would neuer haue ben so attentife to the workes of generation and encrease of posteritie, to the vtter decay in short tyme of al mankinde. For ye shal heare some women in time of their trauayle, moued through great payne and intolerable

The prickes  
of nature.

The first booke.

No ioy with  
out some sorow.

terable anguyſhe, forſweare and bowe  
themſelſe, neuer to company with a  
man agayne, yet after that the panges  
paſſed, within ſhort whyle, for entyre  
loue to theyz husbandes, and ſingular  
naturall delite betweene man and wo-  
man, they forget both the ſorow paſſed,  
and that that is to come. Such be the  
priue woꝝkes of God, and ſuch be the  
pꝛiekes of nature, which neuer createth  
no ſpeciall pleaſure vnaecompanyed  
with ſome ſorowe, neyther is there for  
the moſt part any ſorowe, but that it  
hath annexed ſome ioy or comfort, leſſe  
or more, to alleuiate and lyghten the  
burthen and weyght of diſpleaſure.

¶ Here is declared the ſituation of the  
bladder in women.

Capit. xii.



Now for the vicinite & neigh-  
bourhood that is betweene  
the priue paſſage & the blad-  
der, here I wyll declare a  
lytle the nature of the bladder.

The



The bladder in woman is assituate and set vpon the forepart of the Votter, whose necke is annexed, fastened, & vnite within the priuie passage, vpon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very hard to seperate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the which necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ring, firming and clasping the vrine passage in such wyse, that no vrine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it thereto: which thing cometh to passe, other when the bladder is ouercharged with vrine, or els that the vrine, although that it be but lytle in qualitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, which for the sharpnes and eagernes of the qualitie pricking & tickling the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes for litle quantitie. &c.

The Muskle  
of the bladder.

How the bladder Muskle is forced to open it selfe.

The

## The first booke.

The descrip-  
tion of the  
bladder.

The body of the bladder is round, into the which a lytle aboue the necke thereof, entreth the seconde vrine conduites, deriued from ech kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great maister vayne, and lyke wise of the Artyze, is situate a kydney, in latin called Ren. And to euery of them from the sayde great vayne and great Artyze, is there deriued a braunche of the vayne, and another of the Artyze, by the which braunches the kydneys do attract and drawe blood vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr native office) seperate and deuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, other wise called vrine downe to the bladder, through the vrine vaynes or conduites.

Of the stone engendred in the backe.

In these kydneys is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, either of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or peeces

peeces thereof, descend from the raines  
or kidneis into the bladder, by the fore-  
named brine conduites, and so from the  
bladder out at the yarde, Where, yf the  
peeces be rockie or bygge, it causeth to  
the partie in the auoydyng of them, vn-  
tollerable paynes and torment. And  
note that for the most part the ryght  
kidney euermoze standeth higher then  
the left.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstand,  
that when the brine, pisse, or water is  
once entred through the foresayd brine  
conduites, into the bladder, it can not  
returne bywarde againe the way that  
it came (were the bladder neuer so full)  
for because that where as the said brine  
conduites doo enter into the bladder, in  
the inner face of the bladder, there be set  
before the mouth or gull of the condu-  
ites, certaine litle skinny flappes, which  
suffer any thyng to enter in, but when  
it is once entred, these skinnie flappes  
close the passage, and defende that no  
thyng can rebounde, ne reflue backe a-

The brine once  
entred into the  
bladder, can  
not reuert.

## The first booke.

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bellows, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellows great store of wynde or ayre at once, but when the bellows is full of wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somewhat, there wyll none thereof returne agayne out by that way, the flappes of leather crossing and defending the passage: yea, the more vehemently and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellows together, the faster and more stifly doth the flaps stop the way, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellows, the violence and force of the wynde closing and stoppyng his owne way, so that the bellows would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sayyng that the sayde skynnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftily, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then any notable quantitie or qualitie of the vrine, gathered

thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muscle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passyng thorow the priue passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also, as in the raines, is there in many people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, dysury, with other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is very hard or rather vnpossible to be dissolued, or cured without incision and cutting out. But women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstanding, dyuers of them be here with greuously encumbred.

The stone engendred in the bladder.

Of the Vaynes which resort to the Matrix, and the partes thereof.

Item, of the Termes and their courses, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiiii.

F. ij.

In

The first booke.



**I**nasmuche as the absolute vnderstanding of the nature of the termes in women, can not wel be perceyued, except fyrst it be knowen what vaynes, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the Matrix: therefore first I wyl entreate of them, and then consequently of the termes.

Three notable  
vaynes reso-  
cyng to the  
Matrix.

Uaines then notable, which may be perceyued by Anatomie to reach from seuerall partes of the great Vena caua, or maister vayne, to the Matrix and the partes therof, be thre, to whom for the more cleere, distinct, and evident doctrine sake, I wyl geue thre distinct and diuers names. The first shalbe named the bottome vaynes of the matrix. The second, the necke vaynes of the matrix. The thyrde, the sharpe vaynes.

The bottome  
vaynes of the  
Matrix.

The bottome vaynes be they, which proceede and take theyr begynnyng at the seede bringer vaynes, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the Matrix, there dilatyng them-  
selfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small flippes,  
nouryshyng the body of the Matrix, as  
hath been sayde already in the ende of  
the. ix. Chapter.

As touching the necke baynes of the  
Matrix, ye shall vnderstand that in the  
foresaid. ix. chapter, I shewed you how  
that the great maister bayne, and the  
great arteyre associate together, when  
they attaine about Os sacrum, they begin  
to diuide them selues in two partes  
forkwysse, of the which the right (and so  
likewysse the left) part of the forke is re-  
diuided in other two partes forkwysse  
also, whereof the vppermost and grea-  
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it  
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it  
proceedeth into the vtter part of the  
thygh, & so along downe to the legges  
and feete. The innermost and leste or  
smaller part or bayne of this seconde di-  
uision, where it parteth from the vpr-  
permost, passeth downe along vntyll  
it come to the great hole whiche is al-  
waies in the share bone, through which

The necke  
baynes.

## The first booke.

Of the necke  
vaynes of the  
Matrix.

it entreteth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the sayd hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers flippes and smal braunches in the necke of the Matrix, & the nether part of the body of the Matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more cleerely see in the Figure hereof.

The Share  
vaynes.

The share vaynes take their begynnyng at the insyde of the aboue named vppermost and greatest vayne, even at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer the hockle bone, fro whence this slip is deriued on eche syde, that is, both the ryght and the left, vnto the myddle of the sharebone, where in men it sendeth forth braunches into the skinne that couereth the priue part & the coddles, and also the Peritonium, whiche is the place that is betweene the fundement & the yarde. In women this vayne where it attayneth the middle part of the sharebone, it deriueeth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes, sydes, or extreme ende of the priue passage, and also in  
the



the sayd Peritoneum. And this shal suffice  
 for the declaration of the vaines whi-  
 che resort to the matrix and her partes,  
 saue that ye must vnderstande, that  
 loke what order or procession of vaines  
 cometh to the matrix from the ryght  
 syde, the same selfe order is lyke wyse  
 in the lefte syde: and agayne, that  
 none of these vaines runne to the Ma-  
 trix or otherwhere, vnassociate of an  
 arterie.

Nowe to come to the declaration of  
 the nature of termes: ye shal vnderstand  
 that they be called in Latin Menstrua, so,  
 because that once in a moneth they hap-  
 pen alwayes to womankind after .xiii.  
 or .xv. yeeres of age passed (beyng in  
 theyr perfect health) In English they  
 be named Termes, because they re-  
 turne efrsoones at certayne seasons,  
 tymes, and termes, and some name  
 them their flowers. What name so-  
 euer ye geue vnto it, ye shall wite, that  
 the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng  
 els, but the issuyng of certayne blood;

What is meant  
 by this word.  
 Termes.

The first booke.

comprehended in the vaines of the matrix, there by litle & litle collected and gathered betweene terme and terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which blood, the matrix vaines do attract from the great Vena caua, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so much as there is space betweene the one hauing of the flowres & the other (which is commonly three weekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in fylling, and if they were soner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth agayne. For when they be once replenished, they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe any more, tyl they be lyghtened and discharged of that that is drawn alredy.

Wherefore at the foresayde certayne circuities and termes, the small endes of these matrix baynes open themselves  
in

in the inner face or superficie of the matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this blood, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in women, in this: Forasmuche as almyghtie God had so institute that women shoulde be conceyued, efformed, or fashyoned, augmented, nouryshed, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or matrix to be the sayd receptacle, & house of office wherein she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceaued.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue foode and nouryshment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath provided

The cause of  
the ordinaunce  
of termes.

## The first booke.

vided, that there shouide alwayes be prest and redy a continuall course and resort of blood in the baynes of the matrix, as a very naturall course, spryng, fountayne, or Wel, evermore redy to arise, Water, and noyssh the feature, so sone as it shalbe cōceiued, yea although the woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not with man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no fault in Nature, who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a redinesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeyned for this necessary purpose, yet when the purpose fayleth (as it doth when there is no feature in the wombe to be fedde therewith) it should be to the place but a burthen and unprofitable load, there to remayne or lynger: wherfore then I say, at her set and prescript tyme she laboureth to cleare her self of it, and to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vse. The which thing when she hath so done, yet vnto the sayde baynes of this

continually spring, resorteth of newe as  
 gayne other freshe blood in the place of  
 that that is departed, whiche by litle &  
 litle cooling into them, in the wont cir-  
 cuite of time refilleth them, and then yet  
 issueeth againe, & so this continual course  
 doth keepe alwayes in Women, from  
 their youth, til they come to about fiftie  
 yeeres of age, or litle more or lesse, at  
 what time naturally this spring dryeth  
 away, which when it is gone, it is im-  
 possible for the woman to beare any  
 mo chyldren. For were the woman ne-  
 uer so young & lusty, yet if she neuer had  
 her termes (as some such there be) she  
 shal neuer also haue no chyldre, albeit it  
 may be that she may conceaue, but the  
 seede conceaied can not proue, but mel-  
 teth & issueeth forth agayne for lacke of  
 nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where  
 as some write & say, that the Womens  
 termes folow the course of the Moone,  
 so that in the full or in the wane of the  
 moone they should alwaies come: this  
 is not true, for they haue thē at one time  
 and

They that haue  
 no termes can  
 not beare chy-  
 ldren.

The first book

Termes come  
not to al women  
lxix.

and other in all seasons of the Moone.  
Agayne, as they come not to al women  
after one sort, or at one season, so is the  
tyme of theyr durance not all one in  
euery woman, for in some they lynger  
vpon them. v. vi. viij. yea. viij. dayes at  
ech terme, to their great effeoblishment  
& strong paynes in the backe. In some  
other commonly they passe not the  
space of thre dayes at the vttermost,  
wherfore such sustaine litle or no paines  
at that tyme.

To be short, all women (for the most  
part) which be of very delicate & moyst  
complexions (as the sanguyne chiefly  
be) haue greatest abundance of termes,  
and longer tyme doth it endure vpon  
them. And contrary, such as be dry and  
collelike, other by nature, or labour and  
trauayle, & such that be of complexion  
cold, haue least store of termes, and lesse  
tyme do they endure vpon them. After  
what maner the feature conceaued is  
fedde & nourished with this blood (mat-  
ter at other tymes of the termes) I  
Wyll

Wyll declare, when that I haue some-  
what fyrst shewed the nature of cer-  
taine causes, wherein the feature con-  
ceaued is wrapped and inuolued.

Of the three caules or wrappers wher-  
in the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii.



The seede conceaued  
into the wombe  
or Matrix of the  
mother, anon it is  
amplected, clip-  
ped, & embrased  
of the inner face  
of the matrix, the  
mouth or porte

therof in the meane while closed & shut  
exquisitely. The seede the when it hath  
ben a certaine litle space in the wombe,  
by the naturall heate, or rather by the  
inset & ingenite vertue of that place, is  
enuironed & enclosed round with three  
diuers coates, caules, or wrappers,  
which in Latin they call Inuolucra.

The fyrst and most immediate or  
nearest

The feature  
conceued, is  
wrapped in  
three caules.

## The first booke.

The first caule.

nearest to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleere caule or skinne, Whiche containeth rounde about the whole feature, and yet is fastened to no part of the feature, but onely at the nauell by certayne baynes and artyres, Whereof we wyll speake anone: this caule in Greke is called Amnios, in Latin Agniua, for because it is as delicate as lamber be. The Midwives commonly call it the coyse or biggin of the chylde, & some call it the chylde's shyrt, the which also many times proceedeth alone with the chylde, eyther vppon the chylde's head, or one of the armes or legges. And then the Women reserue it as a thyng that shoulde betoken some great lucke to the chylde in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chylde hath not such a coyse, because it doth appeare but seldom alone, vnaccompanied with the other caules. Betweene this wrapper or coyse, & the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowish sweate which euaporeth continually from the  
skyn



skynne of the infant, whylest it is in the wombe.

The second Wrapper or caule, in Greke is called Allantoides, in Latin Farciminosa, in Englysh, these two termes do signifie (haggaswyle) for because that it is fashioned much after the shape of the outward skynne or bagge of an haggasse puddyng. The inner face and superficie of this caule is smoth and moyste, fastened to no part of the fyrst Wrapper, but onely at the Nauell of the chylde, and contayneth also rounde about, in his compasse and cavitie or holownes, the whole chylde, and the sayd first caule.

The seconde wrapper.

Betweene this and the first caule, is gathered together all the store of vrine that the chylde maketh, during the time it is in the mothers wombe, wherin the industrie of nature is to be lauded, which so prouideth, that this pylle or vrine of the infant should be expelled betweene these two caules, and not remaine about the body therof, lest with the accrimony and eager sharpenesse hereof,

At here the vrine of the chylde becometh.

## The first booke.

hereof, it should endamage and greene the tender body of the baby.

The thyrd  
wrapper named  
Chorion.

The thyrd wrapper of the feature is named Chorion of the Grekes, in Latin, secunde or secundina, in English ye may call it the secundine : Albeit that in the second booke following, I do commonly vse to name the whole afterbirth, the secundine . And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name (of secunde or secundina) to this wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (secunde or secundina) is proper & most due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothyng els but an issuyng forth, and procedyng of these three wrappers or caules, together with such grosse excrementes as haue ben engendred and remayning in the wombe, duryng the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the chylde is first proceeded & come to lyght : for fyrst issueth the Infant, and then secondly the foresaid afterbirth, & therefore it may be iustly called the second birth, or secundine.

This

This Wrapper or caule the, doth not  
 vniuersally, and in euery part compasse  
 and couer the infant as the other two  
 Wrappers do, but onely the myddle re-  
 gion, as it were from the vpper part of  
 the waste, to the share of the infante, so  
 that it is compassed with this Wrapper  
 as with a brode hoope ryng, the lati-  
 tude or breadth whereof, is commonly  
 to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi.  
 or. viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe  
 round about the body therof, as it were  
 a brode girch or swadling band: but yet  
 ye must not vnderstand, that it shoulde  
 touche immediatly the bodye of the in-  
 fante, for betweene this and the bodye  
 thereof (as I haue declared before) be  
 the foresayd two other caules or wrap-  
 pers, whiche generally incloseth round  
 the whole corpes of y<sup>e</sup> infant, where as  
 this hoope caule compasseth and coue-  
 reth but the middle region therof only.

The office & proper tie of this wrap-  
 per is suche: Fyrst the vtter face of it  
 cleaueth and is affixed or basted verye

The office of  
 the hoops  
 caule.

Gi

exact

The first booke.

exactly to the inner face and walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnumerable small vaynes and artyres, which at this tyme doo shewe them selues more clearly in the face of the Matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euerye parte thereof, touchyng the same Matrix, so that the said hoope caule and the inner side of the matrix be basted very thicke together, by the immediate meanes of the sayde vaynes and branches, even much lyke as the bodye of the Iuy tree basteeth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the walles or trees, whereby it creepeth by many hearie fibres or small threedes.

This coniunctiō betweene the matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so brode, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe round about in the Matrix. And these foresayd vaines and artires, do not only knit and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substance of the hoope caule at euerye parte

part thereof. And within the sayd substance of the hoope caule, these manyfold smal braunches meete & enter mingle the one with the other, the vayne with the vayne, and the Arteries with the Arteries, so that in theyr recoultre and meetyng, they produce allwayes bigger and bigger vaynes and Arteries. (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great vaynes, and two great arteries. The which foure vessels from hence proceede together, passe & pearse through the other two caules spoken of before, & so entretch into the Navel of the child, so that the three caules by the meanes hereof be attached, nailed, and fastened to the childe's navel: and when they be entred into the Navel, the two vaynes degenerate in one, the which fro this place mounteth upward along the inner superficie of the belly, vntyl it haue attained into the liver, wher it entering divideth it self againe into many flippes, so that no doubt the blood is carried through this navel vaine, from the

The first booke.

vaines of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the chylde, from whence againe it is attracted into all partes nourishable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyres passe from the Nauel downward, the one along the ryght syde of the chylde's bladder, the other along the left, tyll it atteyne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Through these Artires, lyuely spirite and freshe ayre is deriued out of the mother into the childe, where with the naturall heate of the chylde is viui- fied and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the foresayde nauyll vayne, when the chylde is borne, begin to wither and drye, euerye day more and more, & become much like a Harpestring, without any hollow- nesse or cauitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessel, whiche taketh his original at the bottome, found, or vpper part of the chylde's bladder, & exten- deth it selfe to the nauyl of the Infant, through whiche it passeth vntyl it come  
betweene

betweene the fyrst and the seconde caule  
Without the chyldes body, where, by a  
priue issue deuiled by nature for the  
same purpose, is expelled the vrine of  
the Infant, proceeding by this vrine  
wayne from the bladder, as partly was  
spoken of before, that part of this vrine  
wayne which is within the body, when  
the chyld is borne dyeth and wither-  
eth away, as I sayde of the other.

Which way  
the chyld doth  
expell the  
vrine.

The inner superficie or face of this  
Chorion is very strongly affixed and fast-  
ned to the vtter superficie of the seconde  
caule named Allantoides.

As for the bastynge that is betweene  
the Matrix and Chorion, many tymes it  
is weakened and effeoblised by reason  
of euill, flegmaticke, or colericke hu-  
mours therabout, betweene the bastin-  
ges conceaued, whiche ouermuche ha-  
bouiding, do cloy the said bastynge vaines  
or strynges, whereby many tymes the  
one seuereth from the other before con-  
uenient season, & so causeth aborcement.

The mouthes or specks of the vaines in

in

the

## The first booke.

The substance  
of Chorion.

the matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Choriō,  
be called in latin Acetabula & Cotiledones, for  
what cause, or vpon what reaso, is both  
nedelesse and vnprofitable here to be re-  
hearsed. Agayne, the substance of this  
Chorion is not thinne like a skin, bladder,  
or caule: but of al other partes of the bo-  
dy, it may be most worthily resembled  
to the spleane or melt in a man or beast,  
the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is  
as much or more as the thicknes of the  
thumbe, the colour swartishe black. Of  
which colour also the blood therein con-  
teyned, is as the remayne and refuse of  
the purer, attract and drawen natural-  
lye of the Infant, by the abouenamed  
nauil vaine. So that, to be short, Chorion  
is the immediat receptacle and receauer  
of al the vaynes and artires, to be dedu-  
ced from the Matrix to the chyld, and  
the chyld receaueth only at his hande  
the two vaynes and Artires, whiche  
by the way as they passe & pearse thro-  
row the other two calles, towarde the  
chyldes Nauyll, they sende into eche of  
the



the caules innumerable small eye baynes and artyres, whereby the caules be susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to sturre themselves in the Matric baynes, and at certayne circuites to issue forth: Nowe when there is a feature or chyld in the same Matric conceaued, they proceede no more forth (as superfluous) but remaine and be reserved to the necessarie nutriment of the feature, and some part thereof refueth & is reuerted to the womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of blood, as hath been written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceaued and abused, which call the Termes the womans purgation, or the cleansyng of theyr blood: as who should say that it were the refuse, drosse and vyle part of the other blood remaining in the body, naturallie every

## The first booke.

The termes be  
of so holtsome  
blood as any  
other part in  
the body.

moneth sequestrate and separated from  
the purer, for the vilitie and euill quali-  
tie therein comprehended. For vndoubt-  
edly this blood is euen as pure and hol-  
some as all the rest of the blood in anye  
part of the body els.

The chylye be-  
ing in the wom-  
be, noryshed of  
the purest  
blood.

As it to be thought, that nature would  
feede the tender & delicate Infant in the  
mothers Wombe, with the refuse of the  
blood, or not rather with the purest of  
it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she  
woulde that the pure blood commyng  
fro the Matrix baynes shoulde be made  
yet purer, she suffereth not the same to  
enter immediatly into the Infant, but  
first vseth another meane, and sendeth it  
into Chorion or the hoope cal (as I haue  
sayd before) where truely it hath a cer-  
tayne circulation and another digesti-  
on, wherby it is defecate, and clen-  
sed very exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature  
attenuated and fined, and so at the laste  
sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all  
the grosser part in the spungy bodye of  
the hoope caule.

But

Yet much more are to be detested and  
abhorred the shamefull lyes and flaunder  
that Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis  
mulierum, & diuers other mo haue wryt-  
ten of the venemous and daungerous  
infectiue nature of the womans flowres  
or termes, the which all be but dreames  
and playne dotage. To rehearse theyz  
fond wordes here, were but losse of inke  
& paper, wherefore let them passe with  
theyz aucthors.

Slaunders of  
the termes.

Which of the thre Matrix baynes conteyne the  
Termes, and how the Mylke commeth  
to the womans brestes.

Cap. xv.



Shewed you here  
before, that to thre  
different partes &  
regiōs of the Ma-  
trix, there resorted  
from thre different  
partes of vena caua,  
thre sundrie bayne  
slips. Nowe whi-  
che of these slippes shoulde bryng the  
blood

The first booke.

blood called the Termes into the Matrix, or from which of them the termes shoulde proceede, it is harde clearely to discusse, but onlye by lykely coniectures. And yet it is a thyng very necessarye to be knowne, for the redyer aduertisement howe medicines for that purpose shoulde be applyed in that place, when neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the Termes by some casuallie stopped, or els contrary to restrayne them inmoderately flowyng. For yf the bottome baynes of the Matrix do contayne only the Termes, then shoulde any medicine conueyed vnderneath profite nothyng, except it be conueyed so farre vp, that it may attayne within the holownesse of the Matrix, the whiche is verye litle when the woman is not with chyld.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the Matrix do only contayne these termes, then needed medicines to be applyed no farther then to that place. As for the third Matrix baynes, there is none that

that doth once suspecte the Termes to  
proceede from them : But manye there  
be, which do suppose the termes to issue  
both at the necke baynes, and at the bot-  
tome baynes also, but most notably at  
the necke baynes, for because (say they)  
that these baynes do appeare more con-  
spicuous and notable to the eyes when  
a woman is cut open, then do the bot-  
tome baynes, which may be very skant-  
ly perceaved: wherfore they thinke that  
these necke baynes shoulde be the grea-  
ter stirrer of Termes.

Agayne (say they) we see many tymes  
that after the woman is conceaved, yet  
doth there issue termes tyl the thirde or  
fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth mo-  
neth, the whiche nowe at this tyme can  
not proceede out of the Matrix: for the  
port or mouth therof, according to auc-  
thours opinions, is so closed after the  
seede conceaved, that the poynt of a nee-  
dle can not enter but by violence and  
force. wherfore they conclude, that the  
Termes at this tyme muste needes  
spring

The first booke.

spring out of the necke vayne, and not out of the bottome vaines.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onely out of the bottome vaines, & out of such of the necke vaines as spreade them selues onely within the Matrix, as may be seene in the figure. For insomuche as nature byd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onely to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke vaines of the Matrix serue, where there can neuer be any conception, neither the seede there can remayne. And as concerning the issuing of the Termes after conception, I say that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as blood is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a needle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betweene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes, the

the poynt of a needle Will not easily enter, yet Water or any other liquid thing, may passe through Without lette, and even so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shal not folowe that the seede should passe out thereat, as well as the blood, for the seede is of a more fast, compacte, and stedfaste substance. And besydes this, by that tyme that the seede hath ben but a daye or two in the Matrix, it wareth yet more stable and stedfast, by the natural heate of the place, yea and is compassed with a thinne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, wherefore it Will not so soone issue out of the matrix Without great iniurie.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause why that Physicians do counsell Women which be desirous to conceaue, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, or Waterynes of the matrix (whereby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes & vapours vnderneath, or other  
medi

The first booke.

medicines at the mouth to dry the said humidities, immediately after the Termes be passed, and not bypon the comming of them: for if the woman should be conceaved bypon the comming of the sayde Termes, then woulde they commire them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner, and be made fluy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, washed out with the Termes.

But immediately after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceaved, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the matrix baines be yet open, after the letting forth of the Termes, they shall be the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne the fetues with the feature, by meanes of calues wherein the feature is inuolued, and chiefly of Chorion, named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayde



sayde here before.

¶ Yet when the seede hath ben three or  
foure weekes in the wombe, it is not of  
sufficient quantitie to consume into his  
nutriment all the blood that was wont  
to resort into the Matrix vaines, wher-  
fore the first, second, yea & third month,  
sometymes at the womans wont time  
of Termes, there issueth and sheweth  
some blood more or lesse: the more in the  
whiche were wont at other tymes to  
haue abundaunce of them. &c. And ye  
shal note, that when the child is concey-  
ued, & that the caule Choriō, is fastened &  
basted to the matrix by the vaines ther-  
of, yet do not all the vaines of the matrix  
attaine to the said Choriō, but a certaine,  
so far as Choriō doth reach: howbeit the  
larger that Choriō groweth with y<sup>e</sup> child,  
the mo vaines doth he couer. wherfore  
frō those baynes that be not yet affixed  
vnto Choriō, do the termes flow at this  
time: but whē the child beginneth once  
to come to a greater perfectiō & grow-  
eth, then is all the terme blood reserved  
in

The first booke.

in the Matrix, as litle yenough to satisfie the childe, and then also part thereof mounteth vp into the brestes, & becommeth milke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

Yet agayne to confyrme myne opinion, that the Termes doo only issue out of the vauite of the Matrix: We shal vnderstand, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers Women incure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the streete, being both neare the time of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatly here vppon theyr Termes dyd issue, and so continued dayly, to the one of them, the space of half a yere, & to the other a whole yere: so that after that time the Termes staid agayne, and issued no more dayly as before, but once in foure wekes, at what time they voided great lumpes, cakes, or cloddes of blood, congealed together  
even

euē like the lyuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betweene eche boyding of these lumps of blood (Whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure Weekes) every day continually appeared and issued their whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare the perticuler occasions of this maner of boydyng of the termes, ye shall vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix baynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of blood, and that nearer their tyme of purgation, vpon which bracke, the blood dayly issued afterward, whereby the vigour & kinde heate of the matrix, by litle and litle decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnesse succeeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the matrix, waxed the more contract and narrower, for cold closeth, knytteth, & comealeth. Hereto helpeth also not a litle the great vse of cold binding medicines, which eche of them dyd apply to

The first booke.

this place at the simple counsaile of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the blood went alwayes daily to proceede, remaineth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it comiealeth and cluddereth together, like as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel. and that the blood stande styll in it the space of. v. or. vi. houres, it wyll be concret and comealed in a cludder like a tyuer, the watery part thereof swimming and flitting about upon the face of it: and even so is it of the blood comealed in the matrix, so that when there is so much of this comealed blood conceived together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any longer, then violently and perforce it issueth out together, with farre greater peril, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a chylde.

The whyte flowres that issued, during

ving the time that this blood gathered in the Matrix, was (no doubt) the very Watery the part that flected when the blood coniealed, for that water can neuer conieale as the blood doth: wherefore euery day as fast as the blood dyd conieale in the Matrix, so fast also dyd the water separate it selfe from the blood, and so issued.

Notwithstanding, I am not ignorant that the very white floures in deede do proceede from the seede carriers, into the angles or corners of the Matrix, and so fro thence outwarde, the which disease also men haue many times. And it cometh either of the abundance of flegme in the body, or of the corruption & euill qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose, may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwayes fro within the matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof.

Item, I haue sene diuers other womē, in whom their termes haue stayed the space of. vi. viij. & x. weekes, where with

H. ii.

their

## The first booke.

their bellies haue encreased and wared bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde: Notwithstanding, at the last haue voyded such lyke lumpes of blood, as I haue spoken of here before, not without great peryll and daunger to them in the voydyng, wherewithal their bellies haue relaxed and decreased againe. And thus I make an ende to talke any more of the nature & course of the termes: and now wil I declare somewhat of the conueyance and course of the mylke into the womans brestes: for there is great affinitye, communitie, and familiaritie betweene the Matric & the brestes, whiche naturally do perceyue and feele, anon when the matric hath conceived, and then begin they to brye & to make redy theyr part, agaynst the tyme that the Matric hath all done her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to the most mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe which way the sayde  
 Termes should attayne from the Ma-  
 trix to the brestes, ye shall vnderstande,  
 that the vppermost and greatest bayne  
 of the seconde diuision, spoken of in the  
 xiiij. chap. where it attayneth the hockle  
 bone, redy to passe out of the holonesse  
 of the belly into the thygh, before that it  
 perse the kel called Peritoneum, it sendeth  
 forth a notable bayne branche, which  
 from hence mounteth vpwarde along  
 the belly betweene the ryght Muske &  
 the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue  
 the nauel, where the extreame or vpper  
 ende thereof diuideth it selfe in many-  
 folde lytle braunches, meetyng and en-  
 termynglyng them selues with the ex-  
 treame lytle branches or slippes of ano-  
 ther lyke bayne, descendyng from the  
 vppermost chestbone, downe along the  
 insyde of the chest, and the insyde of the  
 vpper parte of the belly, vntyll it meete  
 with the foresayd mountyng bayne, a  
 litle aboue the Nauel.

And ye shall note, that this bayne  
 H. iij. branch

## The first booke.

branch proceeding from vena caua, at the hyghest chestbone downewarde along the inner side of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeeldeth certayne lytle slippes & small branches of it selfe, betweene the rybbes into the brestes. wherfore the consent of all aucthours is, that by the meanes of these descen- dyng vayne branches at both sydes of the body, & the other ascendyng vayne branches on both sides of the belly, there shoulde be great communitie & felowes- shyp betweene the brestes in women, and the Matric or the Wombe.

For doubtlesse by common experience, ye may see that whē the time of concep- tion in women is, & that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the ter- mes do deminysh & waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe euery day more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of blood, wont at other tymes to boyde in the name of Termes, now at this tyme by the prouidencie & prouision of Nature, is  
retayn



retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate an other way, that is to say, sent from the baynes of the Matric, part thereof vppwarde, by the forenamed ascendyng bayne branches, at their handes agayne receyued and naturally attracted by the other descendyng brest baynes, through whom it is caryed into the brestes, where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into Whyte milke, being before red blood, redy now prepared to nouryshe the chylde when nature shall sende it into the worlde.

Agayne, so long as the woman geueth sucke to the chylde, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very lytle or no quantitie. These be euidences that there should be great familiaritie betweene the Matric and the brestes, forsonmuch as the ebbing of the one, is the flowing of the other: wherefore Physicians sometymes, when the floures issue more vehemently then neede, they set boryng glasses vnder the brestes,

## The first booke.

brestes, meaning thereby to reuert and  
returne vppwarde, the matter enclined  
to much downward: the which prac-  
tise how much it preuaileth, I wyl not  
here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-  
cusse the very veritie as neare as reason  
and the knowledge of Anatomie wyl  
geue leaue, ye shal not vnderstande my  
sayinges that I should meane that al-  
wayes when the termes stop beneath  
by any colde, thought, or other occasi-  
ons, by and by the same blood to stye  
and mount vpp into the brestes, & there  
to become mylke, for the contrary here-  
of is dayly seene. For most commonly  
they in whom these termes do stop, for  
any other cause then conception, the su-  
perfluous blood retayned in the body,  
and in the vayne wandryng, causeth  
to the partie great headache, taketh a-  
way their stomacke, and engendreth di-  
uers other inconueniences, neyther in  
the meane while is there any thing the  
more mylke in the brestes.

Wherefore ye may well say, that the  
cause

cause of plentie of milke in the womans brestes in time of her being with chylde, and much more afterwarde, commeth chiefly by a priuie naturall instinction, whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at that tyme more then at any other, to drawe vnto it selfe greater abundance of blood, conuerting and altering the same by the proprietie of the place, into conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenish the brest the Lermes to be by any occasion stopped beneath, but there must also concurre the attractiue power, inset in the brestes to drawe the sayde blood (matter at other times of the Lermes) without which attraction, be the Lermes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chance that this attractiue power halte, or be not able to attract sufficient matter to make mylke vpon for the Infant: then Phisitions are wont to helpe the debilitie of nature, with cuppyng glasses set vpon or vnder the brestes, or els with gentle

The first booke.

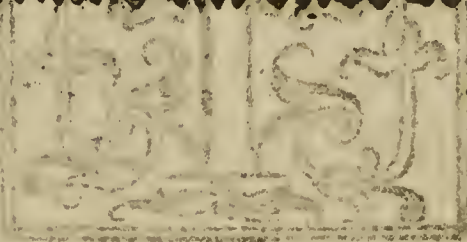
gentle attractive emplaisters applied to the same places.

And although that into the brestes do resort great store of other vaynes, some descending frō the vaynes of the shoulders, and other some from the vaynes passyng by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyson and notable bygnesse, much surmount the quantitie of the abouenamed descending brest vaynes, as it may appeare evidently in many women which haue these vaynes appearing in the superficie of their brestes immediatly vnder the skin, very conspicuous & sightful: yet notwithstanding it is thought by strong coniectures, that the mylke in the brestes should be engendred only vpon the blood mountyng from the aforesayde ascendyng Matrix vaynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other vaynes, howe conspicuous so ever they be, so that the blood in them comprehended, serueth onely to the nouryshment of the substance of the brestes.

The first booke. Fol. liij.

bestes them selues, & not to the main-  
tenaunce of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner  
that nature vseth in circulatynge of the  
attracted blood, whereby alteration is  
made from one coloure to another,  
woulde require a longer processe, the  
which for breuitie we wyll omit at this  
tyme with many other problemes,  
doubtes, and difficulties concernynge  
the same. And so we make an ende of  
this fyrst booke.



*[Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]*

## The first booke.

The declaration by letters of the Figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye, every part in woman, mentioned in this booke before: Which in the former printynges hath been corrupted, but now truly set forth.

The first Figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and karacters of the same.



In this fyrst figure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body layde on the grounde, whose Peritoneum is opened with the muskles of the Abdomen, and turned ouer towarde the insyde, accordyng to the vse of cutting, and after ward we haue cut away all the bowels or entrayles from Mesenterium, the strayght entrayle beyng yet left in the body, with also the whole Mesenterium, whose pannicles we haue here some what taken away, and set a portion from the other; that the nature of Mesenterium myght come to lyght, but this present figure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it might so shew the position of the Matrix or wombe, and the Bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the said Matrix or wombe being moued.

For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from the Matrix or wombe, but that all thynges are here yet wholly seene, lyke wylse as in women  
Some

Some what fat they do appeare to the cyster, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be bered and kylled with long sicknesse, and become most leanest, then they shewe no kynde of processe of vessels, but lesse the pannicles or thynne coueringes be separated asunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of Peritoncum,

EE. A part of Mesenterium, knittynge the thynne intrayles to the backe.

FF. Here is noted another pannicle of Mesenterium, plucked from the other which we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do shewe the order of the vessels of Mesenterium, and order of the karnels put betweene the distributions of the vessels.

HH. In this part of Mesenterium, the entrayle Colon was committed and set to, where it was nyghest to the strayght gut.

I. And in this part of Mesenterium, dyd consist and stande the beginning of the intrayle Colon, or his continuance with the thynne intrayles, and also the blynde gut.

K. The strayght gut beyng there cut of where Colon dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knitting togeather of the hocke bone, with the lowest turning ioynt of the loynes.

L. The former seate of the bottome of the matrix, from whence is nothyng perceiued pluckt away.

M. The right stone or testicle in a woman.

N. The

**N.** The left stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entirely seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause that we haue in such manner set forth the ryght stone: for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle bringeth downe the seede vesselles of a woman, which do spring from Peritoneum: but we haue vncouered the left testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onely without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in any part thereof, but lyeth there onely.

**O.** A pannicle sprynging and growyng forth from the right seate of Peritoneum, and comytting the ryght testicle with the seede vesselles on this syde, and those vesselles whiche infolde the hygher seate of the Matrix to the backe, conteyning together the Matrix or wombe, and afterward with the pannicle of the other syde, constitutyng the second coate of the Matrix.

**P.** This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshy fybres or thinne skynnes, constitutyng the ryght Muskle of the Matrix, or wombe.

**Q.** With these characters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and like to that pannicle, which the foresaid **O** did poynt to vs.

**R S.** The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betweene **R** and **S** with that cote  
which



which the partes of Peritoneum offer vnto it, which bring forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knit it to Peritoneum: but the space being betweene R and S, doth shew the largenesse of the necke of the Matrix. And the wrinkles which are seene here, are they which the necke of the Matrix falling into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shew in the cutting.

T. The bladder whose hinder part is here chiefly seene, for we haue so cast our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we would principally beholde in the body being prostrate and layde along, the hinder seate of the bladder, whiche looketh towarde the Matrix.

For yf ye wyll suppose and imagine this body of a woman, to be set vpryght, as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke other wise then the thyng is, that the bottome of the Matrix is set forth much higher then the bladder.

V. This is a portion of the Dauell, deliuered in the cutting from Peritoneum, and turned ouer togeather with the vessels seruyng properly to the chyld.

X. A portion of a bayne goyng from the Dauell to the lyuer.

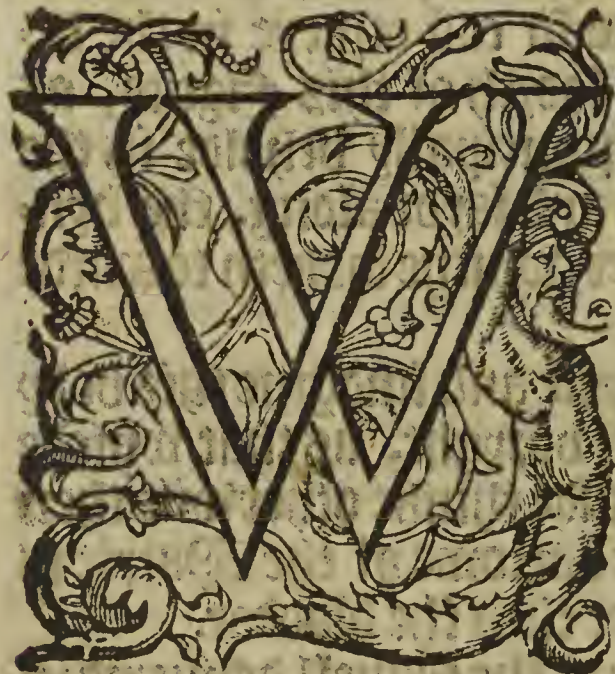
Y. A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder, pertaynyng vnto the Dauell, and bringyng from thence the vrine of the chyld, betweene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Shewe

## The first booke.

Let & Shewe two artyes creeping forth hither from the Mauell, by the sydes of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the branches of the great artire, going principally to the holes of the bones about the priuie members.

The declaration of the seconde Figure of the members of women, and of the karacters of the same.



We have here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates myght, as nygh as may be, be set before the eyes: & after ward we haue cutte away the ventricle with the bowels, and also Mesenterium and the Splene, leauyng the strayght entrayle in this place vnmedled with, as well as we did in the figure before. And moreouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermoſt coate whiche Peritoneum gaue vnto it, cuttyng away also all the pannicles, that the vessels carryng foorth the substance and matter of seede to the stones, and also the vessels carryng away the seede from thence to the Matrix, shoulde appeare and be seene. Also we haue turned ouer the bladder downeward on the leste syde, lyke wyse  
breaking

breakyng the way or conduite which beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng foorth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder should not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this ffigure a portion of the bones about the priuy members, that the neckes of the Matrix & of the bladder myght the more commodiously be seene.

A A. Waynes runnyng foorth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skynne, whiche is brought ouer the heyght of the shoulder.

B. Waynes sprynging from those baynes which are led foorth by the arme hole to the hand.

C. The principall body of the teate.

DD. Karnels and fatnesse spread abroade euery where on the karnelly body, marked with C.

EFGH. The hynder outsyde or insyde of the former seate of Peritoneum outwarde. For the former region of Peritoneum is here bowed bywarde and downward toward the syde.

IK. Portions of Waynes and also Artyres, creapyng foorth downward, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L. The gybolyte or swellng seate of the lyuer.

M. The hollow part of the liuer is here also somewhat seene.

N. A small portion or peece of the Wayne goyng from the Nauell to the lyuer.

O. The stocke of vena porta is here cut away,

## The first booke.

with the vesselles brought vnto it.

P. The holowe bayne.

Q. The great arteyre.

R. The rootes of the arteyres goyng to the ventricule, the lyuer, the spleane, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S. The begynnynge of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.

T. The bayne and arteyre whiche bryngeth the whayse humour to the ryght kydney.

V. The bayne and arteyre whiche bryngeth the whayse humour into the left kydney.

X. The begynnynge of the bayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.

Y. The former seate of the ryght kydney.

Z. The former seate of the left kydney.

aa. The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder, but at the neathermour, a is broken away, but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder, marked with b.

b. The way that carryeth forth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.

c. The way that carryeth forth the brine from the left kydney into the bladder.

dd. The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnynge the hygher d doth shewe.

e. The seede bayne goyng to the left testicle.

f. The sprynging forth of the arteyres of seede.

g. The ryght seede arteyre.

h. The left seede arteyre.

ikl. The former part of the bottome of the Matrix,

trix, and i sheweth the ryght blunt angle or corner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the left, but l sheweth the region or place of the matrix, where the mouth of his bottome consisteth, and where his necke beginneth.

m. This is the strayght gut. And that I may the lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the characters but on the one syde onely.

n. A portion of the bayne and artyre of seede, whiche do go to the vpper syde of the bottome of the wombe.

o. Portion of the baynes and artyre of seede goyng to the testicle, and there ioynyng and goyng together, and constitutyng.

p. A body lyke the spire of a steeple, and this letter p doth poynt vs the roote or foundation of this body, whereas the sayd roote or foundation is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q. From that sayd body such vessels runne forth into the tunicles, committynge and ioynyng the testicle to Peritoncum.

r. The former face or part of the testicle.

s. The begynnyng of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

tt. The bowinges and turnynges ouer agayne of the vessell whiche beareth forth the seede, which turnynges the sayd vessell maketh round about the sydes of the testicle.

v. The goyng forth of the vessell which carryeth forth the seede of the Matrix.

## The first booke.

xx. The necke of the Matrix.

y. Vessels folding in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or Wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z. A bayne commyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karacter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the brine.

μβ The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

γ The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

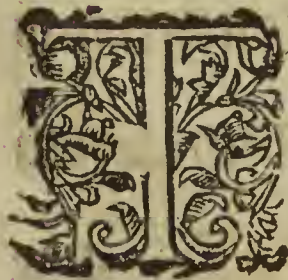
α In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

• Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or openyng of the Wombe or Matrix, and the small hyllockes of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, neede here no speciall declaration with Karacters.

ζ The roote of the Artire, going into the lowest part of Mesenterium.

α Vessels which do ascende and rylse byward to the muskles of the Abdomen, from the Waynes and Artires which do go into the legge.

¶ The declaration of the Karacters of the thyrd Figure of women.



This present figure sheweth the matrix or wombe, with the thinne couerynges which do bynde it to Peritoneum, cut forth from the body and the

The first booke. Fol. clviij.

the necke thereof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or opening of the bottome of the Matrix doth here manyfestly shewe it selfe. And we haue lyke wyse so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownesse of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manyfestly seene.

A. The former face of the bottome of the Matrix, beyng not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

BB. The necke of the Matrix.

C. A part of the bottome of the Matrix, swelling forth into the vpper seate of the necke of the Matrix, in maner of a kinnell.

D. The mouth of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE. A pannicle knittyng the Matrix to Peritoncum, and conteynyng his vesselles.

F. The left testicle of the Matrix.

G. The bayne and artire of seede.

H. Portion of the seede bayne and artyre, comyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I. A portion of the seede bayne and artyre comyng to the testicle.

K. The vessell carryng the seede from the testicle into the Matrix.

L. The holownesse of the bladder.

M. The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N. Here hangeth forth a litle peece of the wayes of the brine.

## The first booke.

The declaration of the Characters of the  
fourth Table of Women.



6 All branches runnyng forth  
into the pannicle, where they  
are committed and ioyned to  
Peritoneum.

7 A portion of the Veayne and  
artyre goyng into the testicle,  
falling to the byper seate of the bottome of the  
Matrix.

8 The commixtion and goyng togeather of the  
seede bayne and artyre, that is lyke the spyre of  
a steeple, whiche we lyken to the braded baynes  
called Varices.

9 The left testicle.

10 The vessell carryng forth the seede from the  
testicle into the Matrix.

11 The blunt angle or corner of the bottome of  
the Matrix, in whom the vessell that bryngeth  
forth the seede attempteth his insertion.

12 In this seate the bottome of the Matrix is  
ended into the necke thereof, and in this region  
or place is the beginnyng of the mouth or ope-  
nyng place thereof.

13 The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

14 Here the necke of the bladder is brought forth  
into the necke of the Matrix, and there endeth.

15 Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of  
the bottome of the Matrix, and also his necke.

16 The swelling brimmes at the mouth of the  
necke of the Matrix.

The



The wayes that bryng the brine from the raynes into the bladder.

The declaration of the Characters of the .v. vi. vii. and .viii. Figures.



We have now diuided this fyfth table of the wombe or Matrix, conteynyng a male chyld on the former syde, with a long section or cut, and another which are ouerthwart slytte, remo-uyng and takyng away, into the sydes,

partes of the coates of the bottome of the Matrix, yea, euen from the vttermost infolder of the chyld.

A B C D. The inner syde of the sayd infolder of the Matrix, whiche before the section was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chyld.

E E. The vtter side of the Matrix, and the hygher E noteth the top or the right angle or corner of the Matrix, brought forth vpward & toward the right side, more then toward the left, because it is a man chyld which is in the wombe.

F. The fyrt or the vttermost infolder of the chyld.

G G. The seconde infolder of the chyld is here

J. iiii.

also

## The first booke.

also a great part seene.

H. A part of the necke of the Matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a bayne and an artire, whiche is principally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix.

I. Here is also yet left the ryght testicle, that the situation of it myght be seene and perceiued in women being with chylde.

The fyrt Table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the Matrix, and not broken.

K. **T**H E vttermoste infolder of the chylde.

L. The seconde infolder of the chylde, which forsomuch as it is transpernaunt in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde (be wrapt within this third infolder) in it somewhat to be seene.

In the seuenth Table we haue diuided the vtter and the seconde infolder of the chylde, with a long section or cutte, and we haue here expresed and shewed forth both the said infolders, taken away from the thyrd infolder, and the thyrd infolder also yet whole.

M. The thyrde or the inmost infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one may easly see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N. The

N. The proceeding or order of Vaynes and Ar-  
tires, goyng to the Nauell from the fyrst infol-  
der of the chyld.

OPOP. The seconde infolder of the chyld.

And OO. shewe his insyde, where PP. sheweth  
his viter syde.

QR. The fyrst infolder of the chyld, where Q.  
noteth the outsyde, and R. the insyde, but the  
proceedyng and order of the vesselles by the se-  
conde and the thyrde infolder, are perfectly kno-  
wen without any helpe of the Characters.



**A**d the eyght Table expresth the  
chyld deliuered from al his coates,  
and so it sheweth hym lying, by the  
wonderfull prouidence of nature,  
not as the common opinion of the  
bulgar sort of wyters affymeth, but as you  
may here see in these figures, & so doth it lye in  
the middest of the wombe. For it is most vnttrue  
that the chyld doth lye in the wombe rounde,  
lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees shoulde  
touch to the face, but as he is set here in the .viii.  
figure. And obseruyng this true situation of  
hym, you shall fynde commonly none other situ-  
ation of the chyld, nor ioynyng of any ioynt of  
hym therein then is here exprest.

But in this figure M M N O P O P Q & R. do  
note the same as in the seventh Table, saue  
that M and M do shewe the insyde, or inner part  
of the thyrde infolder. But S sheweth here pri-  
uately the goyng forth of the vesselles of the  
Nauell

## The first booke.

Mauell, which is betweene the Mauell and the ioyning together of the vessels with the thyrde infolder, whiche is also brought forth with a great space betweene the shewing, where be certayne (as it were) knottes or swellinges, accordyng to the number of the which knottes more or lesse, Mydwyues foolysly do prophesie eyther fewe or many chyldren to the woman, which of the learned men is taken but for a very fantasie, and worthy of reprehention. And moreover, when the chyld commeth forth (as it chaunceth sometymes) hauyng that about his necke, they say that it is the same chyldes destinye to be hanged, with many other foolyshe conceytes, rather to be laughed at, then to be beleued.

### The declaration of the Characters of the ninth Figure of women.



**I**n the ninth figure sheweth the Matrix cut forth of the body, beyng of that bygnesse as it was seene taken forth of a woman at the laste Anathomie which I did see at the vniuersitie of Padua in Italie. And moreover we haue so diuided and cutte asunder the bottome of the Matrix by the myddle, that the concauitie and hollowe bought within the same myght be perceyued, and the thycke substance also of both the coates of the Matrix in women, when they

they be with chylde.

AABB. The concavitie and holowe bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

CD. A line somewhat after the maner of a seame called in Latine Scortum, which doth belong to the place wherein the testicle doth lye, whiche swelleth somewhat forth into the bought of the bottome of the Matrix.

EE. The thickeesse of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the Matrix.

FF. A portion of the innermer bottome of the Matrix, swelling forth downewarde from the hygher seate of the Matrix, into the holownesse and bought of the bottome.

GG. The begyunnyng of the necke or openyng place of the bottome of the Matrix.

HH. The second or vttermer infolder of the bottome of the matrix, descended from Peritoneum.

II. Here we haue reserued a portion on both the sydes of the thinne couerynges, descended from Peritoneum, and conteynyng the Matrix.

K. Here is also seene the substauce of the necke of the Matrix, because the cuttyng where with we diuided the bottome of the Matrix, was begun at this place.

L. A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the Matrix, casting forth into it the brine. The swelling partes of Abdomen, and whatsoeuer is els to be consydered thereof, they may be sufficiently knowen without direction of Characters.

FINIS.

The second booke,

Of the tyme of byrth. And which is called naturall or vnnatural.

Cap. i.



In the first booke We haue sufficiently set forth and described the maner, situation, & forme of the Matric wherein man is conceaued, With dyuers other matters appending and concernyng the better vnderstandyng of the same. And now here in this second Booke, We Wyl declare the maner of the quytyng and deliuerance of the Infant out of the mothers Wombe, With other thinges thereto appertaynyng. And first here in this Chapter We wil declare the tokens and signes whereby ye may perceiue whether the tyme of labour be neare or not: For when the houre of labour approacheth neare, these signes folowing euer more proceede and come before.

First certayne dolours and paynes begin to growe about the guttes, the nacyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and like

tokens to know when the tyme of deliuerance is neare.

lyke wyse about the thyghes, and the other places beyng neare to the priuie partes, which lyke wyse then be ginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is neere.

But ye shall note, that there is two Two sortes of deliuerance. maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashion.

The due season is most commonly after the nyntth moneth, or about fourtie weekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seuenth moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eight moneth, other they be dead before the byrth, or els liue not long after.

The due fashion of birth is this: first The due fashion of birth. the head commeth forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body towarde the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde beyng towardes the face and

## The second booke.

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrst of the byrth Figures. For as hath been sayde alreedy in the fyrst Booke, before the tyme of delyuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers Wombe the head vpward, and the feete downewarde, but when it shoulde be delyuered, it is turned cleane contrary, the head downewarde, the feete vpwarde, and the face towarde the mothers belly, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thying also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the deliuerance is easie without long tarying or loking for it.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is delyuered before her time, or out of due season, or after any other fashyon then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges proceede first, or one alone, with both the handes vp, or both downe, other els the one vp and the other downe, & dyuers other wyse, as shalbe hereafter more clearly declared.

Of



Of easie and breasie, difficult, or dolourous  
delyueraunce, and the causes of it: With  
the signes howe to knowe  
and foresee the same.  
Cap. ii.



Very many be the perylles,  
daungers, and thronges,  
which chaunce to women  
in their labour, which also  
ensue and come in dyuers  
wayes, and for diuers causes, suche as  
I shall here declare.

Many peryls  
chauncing to  
women in their  
labour.

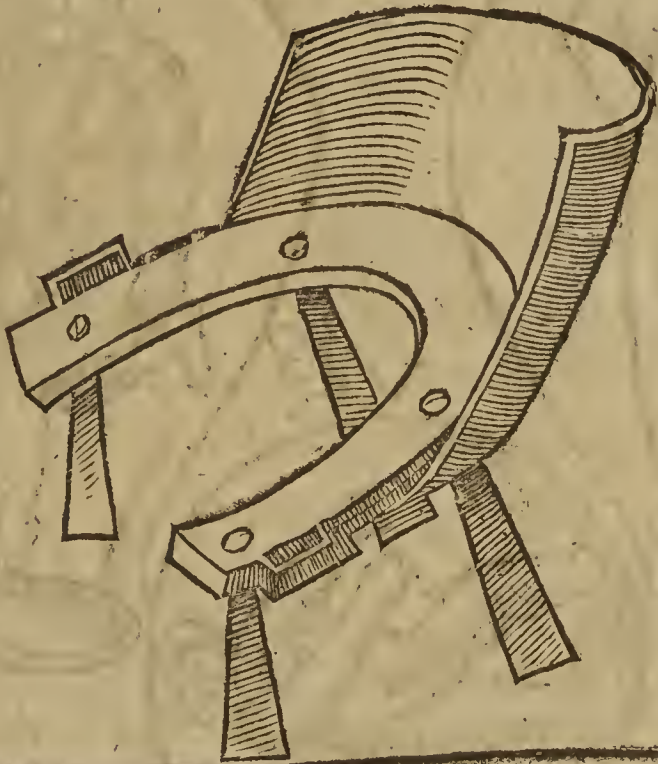
Fyrst when the woman that labour-  
reth is conceaued ouer young, as before  
xii. or xv. yeeres of age (whiche chaun-  
ceth sometyme, though not very often)  
and that the passage be ouer anguste,  
streate, or narrowe, other naturally, or  
els for some disease and infirmitie, whi-  
che may happen about the parte, as  
apostumes, pulshes, pyles, or blysters,  
and suche other. Through the which  
causes, nature can not (but with great  
dolour and payne) open and dilate it  
selfe, to the expellyng and delyueraunce  
of

## The second booke.

of the chyld. And sometime the vesicke  
oz bladder, oz other intrayles beyng a-  
bout the Matric oz wombe, be also a-  
postumate and blystered, which beyng  
greeued, the Matric oz wombe likewise  
foz vicinitie and neighbourhead is gree-  
ued with them, & that hindereth great-  
lye the delyuerance. Also sometime in  
the fundement are humiorrhodes, oz  
piles, and other pushes, chappynge oz  
chynes, which cause great payne. Also  
hardnesse and difficultie oz byndyng of  
the belly, which thynges foz the grieve  
and paine that ensueth of them, causeth  
the woman to haue litle power to helpe  
her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, if the partie be weake  
and of feeble complexion, oz of nature  
very colde, oz to young, oz very aged, oz  
exceedyng grosse and fatte, oz contrary-  
wise to spare and leane, oz that she ne-  
uer had chyld before, oz that she be ouer-  
timorous and fearefull, dyuers, way-  
warde, oz such one that wyll not be ru-  
led, remouyng her selfe from one place  
to

THE BIRTH FYGVRES  
THE WOMANS STOOLE  
THE



II



I



THE BYRTHE

III



IIII



V



VI



VII



▲ FIGVRES ▲

IX



VIII



X



XI



XII



THE BYRTHE FIGVRES

XIII



XIIII



XV



XVI



XVII



to another, all suche thynges causeth the labour to be muche more paynefull, cruell, and dolorous, then it woulde o<sup>r</sup> therwyle be. Also ye must vnderstand, that generally the byrth of the man is easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chyld be of a fuller and greater groweth, then that it may easily passe that narrow passage, o<sup>r</sup> contrarywise, yf it be so faynt, weake, and tender, that it cannot turne it selfe, o<sup>r</sup> doth it very slowly, o<sup>r</sup> if the woman haue two chyldren at once, other els that it with the whiche she labourerh, be a monster: as for example, yf it hath but one bodye & two heades, as appeareth in the .xviii. of the byrth figures, such as of late was seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, when it proceedeth not in due tyme, o<sup>r</sup> after due fashon, as when it commeth forth with both feete o<sup>r</sup> both knees togeather, o<sup>r</sup> els with one foote onely, o<sup>r</sup> with both feete downewardest, and both handes bywardes, other els (the whiche is most perilous)

## The second booke.

sidelong, arselonge, or backlong, other  
els (hauyng two at a byrth) both pro-  
ceede with their feete fyrst, or one with  
his feete, and the other with his head,  
by those and dyuers other wayes the  
woman sustayneth great dolour, paine,  
and anguyshe.

Item, yf the woman suffer aborser-  
ment, that is to say, byrnyng forth her  
chylde in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the  
conception, whiche is before the due  
tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne  
to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the  
porte of the wombe is so firmly and  
strongly enclosed, that vnneth the poynt  
of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the chylde be dead in the mothers  
belly, it is a very perillous thyng, for so  
much as it can not be easily turned, ney-  
ther can it welde or helpe it selfe to come  
forth, or if y<sup>e</sup> chylde be sicke or weakned, so  
that it can not for feeblenes help it selfe.

To knowe  
whether the  
chylde be  
weake in the  
mothers belly.

The which thing may be foreseene &  
known by these tokes: If the woman  
with chylde haue been long sicke before  
her



her labour, yf she haue ben soze lasked, if after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwontly her flowres, yf strayght after one moneth vpon the conception, her brestes yelde any mylke, yf the child styre not, ne mooue at suche tyme as is conuenient for it, these be argumentes & tokens that it shoulde be very weake. By what tokens ye shall knowe it is dead. I shal shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great perill in labouring, when the secondine or latter birth is ouer firme or strong, and will not soone rine or breake asunder, so that the child may haue his easy coming forth. And contrarywise, when it is ouerweake, slender, or thin, so that it breaketh asunder before that the chyld be turned, or apt to issue forth, for then the humours whiche are collect & geathered together about this secondine or seconde byrth, passe away sooner then they should do, & the birth shal lack his due humidities & moistures, which should cause it the eyselyer to proceede, & with lesse payne.

Perill in the  
secondine.

## The second booke.

Excesse of heate  
or colde greatly  
hyndreth the  
labour.

The birch also is hyndered by ouer-  
much colde, or ouermuche heate: for in  
ouermuche colde, the passage and al o-  
ther powers of the labouryng woman  
be coarcted and made narrower, then  
they woulde otherwyse be. Lykewyse  
ouermuch heate debiliteth, weakeneth,  
and faynteth both the woman and the  
chylde, so that neyther of them in that  
case can wel weld or helpe them selues  
for fayntnesse.

And further if the woman haue vsed  
to eat commonly such meate or frutes  
which do exicate or drie, and constraine  
or binde, as Hedlers, Chestnuts, and  
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-  
peres, Quinces, and suche other, with  
ouermuche vse of Uergeus, and suche  
lyke sowre sauces, with Rife, Myll, and  
many other thynges, al this shal great-  
lye hynder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the  
fifth moneth folowing the conception,  
or to bathe in such water where Alome  
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges  
Whiche

Whiche do coarcte and conſtrayne, or yf ſhe haue ben oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at eaſe, or yf ſhe haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurſtie, or haue vſed ouer muche watch and wal- kyng: eyther if ſhe vſed a litle before her labour thynges of great odour, ſmell or ſauour, for ſuche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe vp- ward the mother or Matrix, the which is great hyndraunce to the byrth.

Alſo yf the woman feele payne onlye in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a ſigne of harde labour: lyke wyſe if ſhe were wont in tymes paſ- ſed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great la- bour alwayes in the birth.

Nowe ſignes and tokens of an expe- dite and eaſye deliuerance, be ſuche as be contrary to all thoſe that haue ben rehearſed before. As for example, when the woman hath ben wont in tymes paſſed eaſyly to be deliuered, and that in her labour ſhe feele but little thron- g

Tokens of eaſy  
deliuerance.

## The second booke.

oz dolor, oz though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the neather partes oz bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all paynesfull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good speede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, muche styrreing of the chyld in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paynes tombling in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and mightie of nature, such as can well and strongly helpe her selfe to the deliuerance of the birth. And agayne, euill signes be those, when she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer sore, and that she her selfe in the labouring faynt and swone, these be vnluckie and mortall signes.

Howe a woman with chyld shall vse her selfe,  
and what remedies be for them  
that haue hard labour.

Capit. iiii.

To

**F**o succour and helpe them that are in such difficult perill of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye muste obserue, kepe & marke those things that we shal (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowynge.

First the woman with chyld muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must eschue & forbear al suche occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng whiche can not be auoyded, forsomuch as it cometh by nature, or by long continuance and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, molifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder the birth so much the lesse.

*Howe the labour maye be made more easy.*

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatid

## The second booke.

chaunce about the mother or the priuie part, or about the vesike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and such lyke, the whiche thynges maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or discharged.

In these cases it behoueth such thynges to be looked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some experte Surgion.

Also if the woman be ouermuch constipat or bounde, most commonly she must vse, the moneth before her labour, suche thynges the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolue, and lose the belly, as apples fryed with suger, taken fastyng in the mornyng, and after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tempred with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples.

Also to eat figges in the mornyng fasting, and at night, loseth well the belly. If these profite not, Cassia fistula taken iii. or. iiii. drams one halfe houre before dyner shall lose the belly without peril.

Againe

Agayne, in this case she must refrayne from all such thynges as do harden, refrayne, and constipat, as meates broyled or rosted, and ryce, hard egges, biese, chestnuttis, and all sowre frutes, and suche lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she may receave a clyster, but it must be very gentle and easye, made of a pynt of the broth of a chikin, or other tender fleshe, thereto putting so muche course suger or hony, as may make it reasonably sweete, & halfe a sponefull of whyte salt. Or for the poore woman maye be made a clyster of a pynt of water, wher in hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke, with hony and salt, as before. She may vse also some other easie and temperate purgation, to molifie and lose her with all, as Mercury sodden with flesh in postage, and diuers such other, or els a suppositor tempered with sope, larde, or the yolkes of egges.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour drawing neare) she ware faynt or sicke-lye,

Things to take  
the belly.

Wherwith to  
comfort the  
woman in her  
laboure

## The second booke.

tye, then must ye comfort her With good comfortable meate, drynke, holisome and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynges the whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such thynges the which may laxe, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth maye the more freely proceede, and that chiefly in the yonger women. The elder women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thynges which haue propertie to lenifie and soupple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outwarde fomentations, bathynges, suppositoies, and annoyntmentes.

Anoyntmentes to soupple.

Anoyntmentes Wherewith ye may soupple the priue place, be these, Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Oliue, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscosite of holyoke, and such other: & for drynke, let her vse good rype wine mixed with water: also there



there muste be a consyderation in the dieting of the woman, that she maye vse suche thynges the whiche may moy- sten her, and not make her fatte. Con- trarywyse, let her auoyde such thynges the whiche shoulde exicate, drye, con- strayne, or coarct her, and that all the moneth before her labour. But about ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele a- ny payne or greefe) let her vse every day to washe or bathe her with warme water, in the whiche also that she tarpe not ouerlong in bathyng for weaknyng of her, and therein let her stande, so that the water come aboue the nauyll a lit- tle, and also seathe in the water Ba- lowes, Holyoke, Camomell, Mercurie, Baydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke seede, and suche other thynges whiche haue vertue to mollifie and softe. And yf it be so, that for weakenesse of the bo- dy she may not endure this bathyng in warme water, then with a sponge or other cloth dypped in the foresayde bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete,  
her

Bathes to lose  
and gentlye to  
open the body

## The second booke.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the whiche thynges shall greatly profite to her. But in suche tyme beware ye come not in the comunon hot houses, for they would cause you to be feeble and faynt, which were yll in this case.

Annoyntments  
to supple.

And when ye are thus bathed or washed, then shall it be very conuenient for you to annoynt with the foresayde greces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyl, sydes, and suche places as are neare to the priuie partes. Furthermore, it shall be greatly profitable for her to conuey inwarde into the priuie parte these foresayde oyles or greces with a sponge, or other thyng made for the purpose, she lying vpright, the middes of her bodye most hyst, so that it maye the better remaine within her, and that chiefly yf the Matrix be drie, other els the partie very leane and spare.

Sweete fumes.

It shall be also very profitable for her to suffume the nether places with Muske, Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on embres, yelde a goodly fauour, by the  
which

whiche the neather places open them-  
selfe, and drawe downeward.

Also as I sayde before, she must take  
godd hede to her diet, that she take thin-  
ges the which may comfort and streng-  
then the body, feeding not overmuch of  
any thing, and to drynke pleasaunt and  
wel savouring wine, or other drynke, al-  
so moderately to exercise the body in do-  
ing some thing, styring, moving, going,  
or standyng, more then otherwylse she  
was woont to do, these thinges further  
the byrth, and make it the easier, and  
this is the manner of diet the whiche  
we advise the woman to kepe the mo-  
neth before her labour, or longer.

Another diet there is, the whiche she  
ought to obserue in the tyme of labour,  
when the stormes and thronges begyn  
to come on, & the humours whiche yet  
hitherto haue remained about the Ma-  
trix or mother collected, nowe begyn  
to flowe forth, and this maner of dyet  
consysteth in two sortes. First that such  
thinges be procured & had in redynesse,  
whiche

What is to be  
don whē the  
tyme of labor  
is come.

## The second booke.

whiche may cause the byrth or labour to be very easy. Secondly, to withstand, defend, and to put away (so neare as may be) the instant and present dolours. And as touching this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit styl, then (rising agayne) to go vp and downe a payre of stayres, crying and reaching so loude as she can, so to styre her selfe.

And also it shalbe very good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that through that meanes, the guttes and intrayles be thrust together, and depressed downewarde. And it shalbe very good to receiue some medicine to prouoke the birch, of the which we wyll speake more hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceiueth the Matric or Mother to waxe laxe or loose, and to be dissolved, and that the humours issue forth in great plentie, she shal it be meete for her to sit downe, leaning backward in maner vpright. For the whiche purpose in some regions

(as

(as in Fraunce & Germanie) the Mid-  
 wifes haue stooles for the nonce, which  
 beyng but lowe, and not hve from the  
 grounde, be made so compassewyle and  
 cane or holowe in the middes, that that  
 may be receyued from vnderneath whi-  
 che is looked for, and the backe of the  
 stoole leaning backward, receyueth the  
 backe of the woman: the fashion of the  
 whiche stoole, is set in the beginning of  
 the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the time of labour is come,  
 in the same stoole ought to be put many  
 clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the  
 which the Midwife may remoue from  
 one syde to another, accordyng as neces-  
 sitie shal require. The midwife her selfe  
 shal sit before the labouryng woman, &  
 shall diligently obserue and waite, how  
 much, and after what meanes the child  
 styreth it selfe: also shal with her han-  
 des, first annointed with the oyle of Al-  
 mondes, or the oyle of white Lillies,  
 rule and dyrecte euery thyng as shall  
 seeme best.

Also

## The second booke.

The Midwyfe  
must geue com-  
fortable wordes  
to the partie  
trawoyling.

Also the Midwyfe muste instruct and comfort the partie, not onely refreshing her with good meate and drinke, but also with sweete wordes, geuyng her good hope of a speedefull deliuerance, encouragynge and enstomakynge her to patience and tollerance, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as shee may, also strekyng gently with her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downewarde.

But and yf the woman be any thyng grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lye groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downewarde, annoynting also the priuie partes with the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Midwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straighes (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe wel to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Midwyfe aboue  
all

The second booke. Fol. lxxij.

all thynges take heede of, that she com-  
pel not the woman to labour before the  
byrth come forwarde, and shew it selfe:  
For before that tyme, all labour is in  
vayne, labour as much as ye lyst. And  
in this case many tymes it cometh to  
passe, that the partie hath laboured so  
fore before the tyme, that when she  
shold labour in deede, her myght and  
strength is spent before in vayne, so that  
she is not nowe able to helpe her selfe,  
and that is a perrilous case.

To labour  
much before the  
one tyme, doth  
but feeble the  
woman, and no  
thyng profite.

Furthermore, when the Seconde  
or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth  
is wrapped and conteyned) doth once  
appare, then may ye knowe that the  
labour is at hand, wherfore if the same  
seconde breake not of his owne kynd,  
it shalbe the Midwives part and office,  
with her nayles easly and gentelly to  
breake and rent it, or yf that may not  
conveniently be done, then rayse vp be-  
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut  
it of with a payre of sheares, or sharpe  
knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

L. i.

With

The second booke.

With the cut. This done, by and by en-  
sueth consequently the flux and flowe  
of humours, of the whiche I spake be-  
fore, and then next foloweth immediat-  
lye the byrth.

*should be  
to be done  
of the  
of the  
of the*

But if it so channce that the Secon-  
dine should be cut by the Midwife, and  
all the watery part issued and spent be-  
fore due time & necessitie should require  
it, so that the priuie passage be left ex-  
cite and dry, the byrth not yet appea-  
ryng, by this meanes the labour  
should be hindered and letted. In this  
case ye shall annoynt and molstie that  
priuie passage with the oyle of Whyte  
Lyllyes, or some of the greases spoken  
of before, first warmed, and so conueied  
into the priuie partes, the which thyn-  
ges wyll cause the way to be slyppery,  
souple, and easie for the byrth to passe.  
But chiefly in these difficulties should  
profite the whyte of an egge, together  
with the yolke powdered into the same  
place, which shoulde cause it to be most  
slypperie and slydyng, and supplie the  
roomie



roome of the natural humidities spent before.

And if it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the commyng forth, then must the Wydwyfe helpe all that she may, with her hand fyrst annoynted with some oyle, openyng and enlargyng the way, that the issue may be the freer. Lykewyse must be done yf she beare two chyldren at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, when that fyrst procedeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordinately, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowynge.

The head proceedinge fyrst.

ii. But when the byrth commeth not naturally, then must the Wydwyfe do all her diligence and payne (yf it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderly with her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaunceth the chylde to come the legges & both armes & handes downward, close to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth

To overtake the

The legges and both handes downe proceedinge fyrst.

The second booke.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Midwyfe must doo all her payne With tender handlyng and annoynting to receyue foorth the chylde, the legges being still close together, and the handes like wyse remayning, as appeareth in the sayd second figure.

Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Midwyfe shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst foorth, vppwardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downeward by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturally agayne and without peryll myght it proceede & come foorth as the fyrst.

The chyld of  
the byrth  
figures.

iiij. Agayne sometime the byrth cometh foorth with both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lyfted vp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perillous maner of birch that is, as appeareth in the .iiij. of the byrth figures. And here must the Midwyfe do what she may to turne the byrth (yf it may be possi-

possible) to the first figure, and yf it wyl not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the seconde figure. But yf this also wyl not be, then receyue the feete as they come forth, and binde them with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the byrth tyl all be come forth, and this is a very ieopardous labour.

iiij. Also sometyne the byrth cometh forth with one foote onely, the other being left vpward, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouring woman to lay her vpryght vpon her backe, holdyng vp her thighes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her body, then let the Midwyfe with her hande returne in agayne the foote that cometh out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth to styre and moue her selfe, so that by the mouyng and styrring, the byrth may be turned the head downewarde, and so

The fourth figure.

The second booke.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then  
to set the woman in the stoole agayne,  
and to do as ye dyd in the fyrst figure.  
But yf it be so, that notwithstanding  
the mothers styrryng and mouyng, the  
byrth do not turne, then must the Mid-  
wyfe with her hande softly fetch out  
the other legge whiche remainned be-  
hynde, euer more takyng heede of this,  
that by handlyng of the chylde, she do  
not remouene set out of theyr place the  
two handes hangyng downward to-  
warde the feete.

*The .v. figure.* **v.** Lyke wyse sometyme it cometh  
to passe, that the side of the chylde com-  
meth forwarde, as appeareth in the .v.  
figure, and then must the Midwyfe do  
so, that it may be returned to his natu-  
rall fassion, and so to come forth.

*The .vi. figure.* **vi.** Also sometyme the chylde com-  
meth forth the feete forwarde, the leg-  
ges beyng abroad, as in the .vi. figure,  
and then must the Midwyfe see, that  
the feete & legges may be ioyned toge-  
ther, and so to proceede and come forth,  
euer

euermore regarding the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees The. xii. figure or both forward, as in the. vii. figure, then must the Midwyfe put up the byrth, till such time as the legges & feete come ryght forth, & then to do as afore.

viii. When the chyld commeth head long, one of the handes commyng out and appearng before, as in the. viii. figure, then let the byrth proceede no farther, but let the Midwyfe put in her hande, and tenderly by the shoulders thrust in the byrth agayne, so that the hand may be resettled in his place, and the byrth to come forth ordynately and naturally, as in the fyrst figure: But yf by this meanes the hande come not to his conuenient place, then let the woman lye vpryght with her thighes and belly vpwordes, and her head downewordes, so that by that meanes it may be brought to passe, and then bryng her to her seate agayne.

ix. But yf it proceede with both The. ix. figure handes

The second booke.

handes forwardes, then must ye lyke-  
wise do as before, by the shoulders thru-  
styng it backe agayne, vntyll such tyme  
as the handes ly close to the sides, & so to  
come forth, as appereth in the .ix. figure.

The .x. figure.

x. But when it commeth arswarde,  
as in the .x. figure may be seene, then  
must the Midwife with her handes re-  
turne it agayne, vntyll such tyme that  
the byrth be turned, the legges & feete  
forwarde: other els, yf it may be so, it  
were best that the head might come for-  
warde, and so naturally to proceede.

The .xi. figure.

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and  
come forth first with the shoulders, as  
in the .xi. figure, then must ye fayre and  
softlye thrust it backe agayne by the  
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head  
come forwarde.

The .xii. figure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth  
foorth with both the handes and both  
the feete at once, as in the .xii. figure,  
then must the Midwife tenderly take  
the chylde by the head, and returne the  
legges vpwarde, and so receiue it forth.

xiii. And

The second booke. Fol. lxxvi.

xiii. And when it commieth brestward The. xiii. figure  
as in the. xiii. figure, the legges and hand-  
des bydyng behinde, then let the Myd-  
wyfe take it by the feete or by the head,  
Whiche that shalbe most apt and con-  
modious to come forwarde, returnyng  
the rest vpyward, & so to receiue it forth:  
but if it may be hedling, that shalbe best.

xiiii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth The. xiiii. figure.  
the woman to haue two at a burthen, &  
that both proceede together headlong,  
as in the. xiiii. figure, and then must the  
Mydwyfe receyue the one after the o-  
ther, but so, that she let not slyppe the  
one, whylest she taketh the fyrst.

xv. If both come forth at once with The. xv. figure.  
their feete forward, then must the Mid-  
wyfe be very diligent to receiue first the  
one, and then the other, as hath been  
shewed before.

xvi. When the one commieth head- The. xvi. figure.  
long, the other foote wise, then must the  
Mydwyfe helpe the byrth that is most  
nearest the issue, and it that commieth  
footelong (if she can) to returne it vpon  
the

The second booke.

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng  
ever heede that the one be not noysome  
to the other in receyuyng foorth of ey-  
ther of them.

And to be short, let the Mydwyfe of-  
ten tymes annoynt & mollifie the way  
and passage with some of the foresayde  
oyntmentes, to make the womans la-  
boure so much the easier, and haue the  
lesse trauallye and payne. And yf there  
chaunce to be any Apostume or disease  
about those places in this tyme, by such  
annoyntyng to alaye and swage the  
payne, so that for the time it may be the  
lesse grieffe to the partie, as I spake be-  
fore also. And for them that be in this  
case, it shalbe best to lye groueling, as I  
sayd of the grosse, fatte and fleshy wo-  
man.

**R**emedies and medicines by the whiche  
the labour may be made more tol-  
lerable, easie, and with-  
out great payne.

Cap. b.

The



**T**he thynges which helpe the birth & make it more easie, are these. First the woman that laboureth must eyther sytte grouelyng, or els vpright, leaning backward, according as it shall seeme commodious and necessary to the partie, or as she is accustomed. And in winter or colde weather, the chamber wherin she laboureth must be warmed, but in sommer or hot weather, let in the ayre to refresh her withall, lest betwene extreme heate and labour the woman faint and sowne. And furthermore, she must be prouoked to kneesyng, and that eyther with the powder of Eleborus, or els of Pepper. Also the sydes of the woman must be stroken downward with the handes, which thyng helpeth greatly & furthereth. And let the Mydwyfe alway be very diligent, prouidyng and seeyng what shalbe necessary for the woman, annoynting the priuities with oyle, or other such greace as I spake of before, in this fashion.

Meanes to  
helpe and pro-  
moke the byrb.

The

## The second booke.

A good mollifi-  
yng oymment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or Duches grese, & with that temper two graynes wayght of Saffron, and one grayne of Muske, and therewith annoynt the secrete partes. If this profite nothyng, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrrhe, Galbanum, Castorium, let those be beaten, and make lyke pylles of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylles, and put it on hotte coales, and let the woman receyue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelowe bymestone, Myrrhe, Madder, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of ech lyke much, and temper al those together, making of them pylles, and with those also ye may make fume, to be receyued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer dung, or of Haukes dung, by puttyng to of Oppoponacum, is soueraigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in delyueraunce.

Also it is very good to dyp wooll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conuey into the secretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia rotunda, or the roote called Bothor martis, Ciclaminus, or malum terre, or the seede of Stauisagre, any of these wrapped in wooll, and conueyed in warde, prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item, take Heleborus, Oppoponacum, and wrap them together in wooll, & minister them in warde, for that wyll bring forth and prouoke the byrth, whether it be alyue or dead. Also the  
rynde

The second booke. Fol. lxxij.

rynde and barke called Cassia lignea beaten to powder, and tempered with wine & drunken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item Asa fetida, of the bignes and wayght of a Pease, mingled together with Castorium, of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wine mixt with water, and so drunken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell drunke with wine is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of Fenegreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayre, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of blewe flouredeluce, a small quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. And Cassia lignea and Asa fetida drunke with wine, be very good for the same.

Also Holyoke sodden in cunduite water and drunken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is very good for her to washe her in the water in the which this Holyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylls the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell, or Cinamome, and Sauiue, of ech a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a halfe, of Myrre, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of ech a dram, of Storax liquida halfe a dram, & of Oppium the waight of. xii. graynes, beate these altogether, & fourme them into pylls, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylls with

## The second booke.

with two ounces of good olde wine.

Item, Saffron and Syler montanum p<sup>ro</sup>mo-  
keth the byrth of any lyuyng thynge, yf it be drum-  
ken: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng  
a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie  
shoulde greatly hurt.

Item, take .v. drammes of Sauiue, of Rue or  
hearbe Grace one dragma and a halfe, of Jun-  
per beryes two drams, of Asa fetida, Amoniacū,  
Madder, of ech two drams, of these make pylles,  
geuen to the woman in labour, with water in  
which is sodden Sauiue and Penitriall, or els  
with the broth of Cicercula, and the iuyce of  
Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauiue, of Asa  
fetida, Amoniacum and Madder, of eche halfe a  
dram, these temper together in pylles, and geue  
her with Wine one dram of the same.

Item, take of Aristolochia longa, Pepper, and  
Myrre, of eche lyke muche, confict them toge-  
ther with wine, and make pylles of them, and  
minister them with an ounce of water of the  
decoction of Lupines, these pylles be of suche ef-  
ficacie and strength, that it alleuiateth and vn-  
payneth the byrth, it deliuereth the Matrix or  
Mother from all maner of byrth, be it alyue or  
dead.

Item, take of whyte Bedellium, Myrre, and  
Sauiue, of eche lyke muche, temper these with  
Cassia lignea, and Hony, & make pylles of them  
to the bygnesse of Pealon, and of these pylles  
geue at ech tyme fyve to the labouring woman,  
which

The second booke. Fol. lxx.

which be of the same myght and strength, that the other pylls spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrre, Castorium, & Storax, of eche one dram, temper them with Honey, and make pylls of it: these for this purpose excell and passe all other; they be of suche vertue and strength in operation.

A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wyldc Gowarde, and seethe it in water, in the same water temper Myrre, the iuyce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thynges together, and make it plaster wyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betweene the Nauell and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and power to prouoke birth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all such thynges for breuitie and shortnesse, we haue set here only a certayne, whose efficacie and power shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

Howe

The second booke.

How the secondine or second byrth  
shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come  
not freely of his owne kinde.

Cap. v.



Here also sometime it com-  
meth to passe, that the se-  
condine which is wont to  
come together with the  
byrth, remayne and tarry  
behynde, and followe not, and that for  
diuers causes. One is, for because per-  
adventure the woman hath ben so sore  
weakened & feeblyshed with trauayle,  
dolour, and payne of that fyrst byrth,  
that she hath no strength remaynyng  
to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the  
second byrth. Another may be, that it  
be entangled, tyed, or let within the ma-  
tric (whiche chaunceth many tymes)  
or that it be destitute of humors, so that  
the water be flowen from it sooner  
then tyme is, whiche shoulde make the  
places more slipperie and more easie to  
passe thorowe: Or els that the places  
ouer weeryed with long & sore labour,  
for

for payne contract or geather together,  
and enclose them selfe agayne, or that  
the places be swolne for anguythe and  
payne, and so let the commyng forth of  
the second byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoener cause  
it be thus stopped, the Midwyfe in any  
wyse must fynde suche meanes, that it  
may be vnloosed and expulsed. For o-  
therwyse, great inconueniencie shoulde  
chaunce to the partie, & specially suffo-  
cation and choking of the Matric, whi-  
che also must so much the more be taken  
heede to, for because the second birth re-  
tayned and kept within, wyl soone pu-  
trifie and rot, wherof wyl insue ill noy-  
some & pestiferous vapours ascendyng  
to the hart, the braynes, & the midriffe,  
through the which meanes the woman  
shalbe short winded, faint harted, often  
soundyng, & lying without any maner  
of mouyng or styrryng in the pulces:  
yea, and many tymes is playnely suffo-  
cated, strangled, and dead of it.

Wherfore that none of these thinges  
happen

¶ i.

The second booke.

happen, with all diligence and payne it must be provided that the secondine be expelled.

Retention of  
flowes for  
weakenesse.

If retention of it come by weakenesse of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be recomforted & strengthened with good comfortable meats and drinks, which may enhart her, as broth made of the yolke of Egges, or with good olde wine, and good fat and tidie flesh, or Birdes, hennes flesh, Capons, Partridge, Piggins, and such lyke.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contracte together agayne, eyther els that the Vatric is swollen for long paine: then must be vled such thynges to prouoke it out, the which doo make the way slypper, supple, & easie for it to proceede, with the oyles of oyntmentes spoken of before, as oyle of white Lillies, of Maiorum, and of blewe Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or Galbanum, beaten to powder & drinke with luke warmed wine, wyl cause the same  
to



to issue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Peneral  
sodden in wine, and the decoction drun-  
ken, is of the same vertue.

Item, to suffume the secretes with  
the perfumes written of before, is good  
for this purpose, and the vapour of the  
water in which Mallowes, Holyoke,  
and Berefoote be sodden, receyued be-  
neath, is lyke good.

Also to washe that partes in water  
in which is sodden Branne, or to holde  
a lytle bagge full of sodden Branne to  
the place, and therewithall to soke the  
place, is very profitable.

But yf the retention of the secondine  
come by reason that it is entangled or  
fastened in some place of the Matrix, so  
that it wyll not resolue ne loose: then  
make a fume vnderneath of brimstone,  
Iuie leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cres-  
ses and Fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and sweete  
smellyng thynges, as Ambre, Muske,  
Frankencense, Gallia Muscata, and confec-

M. ij.

tion

## The second booke.

tion neare, the which saours and perfumes put on the embers, must be so closely receiued vnderneath, that no part of the smell do ascende to the nose of the woman. For to the nose shoude the saour of nothing come, but only of suche thinges the which stinke, or haue abhominable smel, as Alafetita, Castoriū, mans heare or womans heare burnt, Peccokes fethers burnt. Item, in this case it shalbe very good to make a perfume vnderneath of the houe of an asse, which thinges although they be of yll saour, yet they be of such nature and efficacie, that they occasionate not only the setondine, but also dead byrthes to proceede and come forth out of the Matrix.

And in this case also let the woman holde her breath inwarde, so muche as she can, for that shall dryue downward such thynges as be in the body to be expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese with the powder of Eleborus or Pepper put in the nose, holding her mouth and  
nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called Vnguentum Basilicon, conueyed into the matrix, is very good, for it molifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the whiche so done as it is expelled, infuse the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item, Rose water tempered with a quantitie of the powder of Holyoke, and drunke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any part of the secondine do appeare, let the Midwife receyue it tenderly, loosyng it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and yf ye doubt that it wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the whiche she hath handfast, to the womans legge or foote, not very strayght lest it breake, neither very laxe lest it slipp in agayne, and then cause her to sneese. Now yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quickly forwarde, then loose it a litle and a litle very tenderly, wreathyng it from one syde to another, tyl such tyme

M. iij.

as

as it be gotten out, but ever beware of violent and hasty mouing of it, lest that with the seconde byrth ye remoue the Matric also.

And yf in this meane whyle the woman faynt or sowne by reason of great payne ensuyng of the takyng away of this secondine, then must ye minister such thynges to her the which comfort the head and the hart, as be electuaries which are confect with Muske, Ambre, and the confection of pretious Stones, as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also suche thynges the whiche comfort the stomacke, as Diagalanga, Dia cinamomum, and such lyke, which are alway in a redynesse at the Apothecaries, the which also she shall receiue with wine.

Item, to remoue the secondine, & to expel it, take Rue, Horehounde, Sothernwood, and Motherwortt, of eche lyke quantitie, and then take so much of the oyle of Lillies, as may be sufficient to stepe, moysten, and soke the foresayd hearbes,

The second booke. Fol. lxxij.

herbes, put all this togeather into a glafen potte, couered with such a couer, that it haue a lytle hole or vente aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer a fyre of coales, so that it boyle a lytle whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole, where the woman sytteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the which the one ende ye shall put into the vent or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receyue into her body, and so to sit closed rounde about with clothes, that no vapoure or ayre goe forth of the pot, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it, to keepe it hotte: and thus sitte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the seconde moue or begyn to proceede of his owne kynde.

And if it be so that ye profite not this wayes, yet then laye this plaster on the bellye betweene the nauell and the secretes, of the whiche we shall speake

D. iij.

hereafter,

## The second booke.

hereafter, the which is of such operation and efficacy, that it expelleth dead byrthes. If for all this the secondine come not forward, then leaue it, and vse no more medicines ne remedies to that purpose, but let it alone, for within few dayes it wyl putrifie and corrupt, and dissolve into a watery substance, thicke lyke bryne or other fer mixed with water, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the meane whyle it wyl put the woman to great paine in the head, in the hart, and in the stomacke, as we touched before.

How that many thynges chaunce to the women after their labour, and how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi.

**I**t is also to be vnderstanded, that many times after the deliuerance, happeneth to women other the feuer or ague, or swelling, or inflation of the body, other tumblyng in the belly, or els commotion or settelyng out of order of the Mother

ther or Matric. Cause of the whiche thynges is sometymes lacke of due and sufficient purgation and clesyng of the flowres after the byrth, or els contrary wyle ouermuche flowyng of the same, which fore doth weaken the woman: also the great labour and styrryng of the Matric in the byrth.

Then as oft as it cometh for lacke of due purgation of the flowres, there must be ministred suche thynges the which may prouoke the same, whether it be by medicines taken at the mouth, or by lotion and washing of the feete, or by fumies, or odour, or emplastration, or by decoction of hearbes seruing to that purpose, or els by oyntmentes, and such other thynges, according as the person or the peryll doth require: of the which thynges, few or no women be ignozant. And ye must take diligent hede that she be exactly & vtterly purged. To this be agreeable all in the symples the whiche prouoke brine, and open the vaynes, makyng free way for the blood to passe  
and

## The second booke.

and sende the humoures and matter downward, as Motherwort, Asarum, Sauiue, Peneriall, Parsley, Charuyl, Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper berries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder, Valerian, Tymie, Cinamome, Spike-narde, and such other. Al those thinges as they do prouoke & cause brine, so do they also prouoke and cause the flowres to depart. Howbeit, as neare as ye can, vse none of these thynges without the counsaile of an expert Phisition, lest whylest ye helpe one place, ye hurt another: also to sneese, helpeth muche to this matter, & to holde in the breath, enclosing the nose and the mouth. Also fumigation made of the eyes of salte Fyshes, or of the houe of a Horse vnderneath, prouoketh the flowres. If ye profite not by this meanes, then beyng able to beare it, let her blood in the vaine called Saphina, vnder the ancles of the feete, for this prouoketh flowres chiefly of all other thynges.

Like wise do, if the woman haue the



ague after her labour, for that commeth of like cause by retention of the flowres, and in the feuer let her vse to drinke water, in the which is decocted Barley beaten, or Cicer and Barley together, or water in which is sodden Tamarindi, or whay of mylke, and let her eate a cullis made of a Cocks, and Sweete Pomegranates, for these thinges do prouoke the flowres, and mittigatech the immoderate heate, refreshing greatly the body, loosyng and opening such thynges the which before were constricted and clud-  
 dered together.

For the ague in  
 women with  
 chyloca

If the body after labour do swel and inflate, then let her drinke water, in the which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, beaten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuarie called Diacimum, or of the Trochiskes of Alkechenge, other wyse called Halicacabus.

Also in this case a clyster made of such thinges the whiche doo banquyshe and expell ventosities and wyndynesse, as Annis seede, fenell seede, Rue the hearbe & the seede, Bay berries,

Com

## The second booke.

Commin. &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for that part of Aristolochia rotunda, Squinanium, Storax Liquida, Dorenicum, Zeduarina.

Agayne, if the woman after her labour haue frettyng and gnawing of the guttes, and payne of the Matrix, and other secrete partes there about, then let her vse the vapoure and fume of suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to mitigate, swage, and alay the payne, as Mallowes, Holyoke, fenegreke, Commin, Camomell, and Sauine. Of these also make emplasters and bagges, the which may be applyed to the payned places.

Also to annoynt the places with Oleum sesaminū (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Almondes. And if no great heate do abounde in the woman, she may drynke Triacle, or Trifera magna, with wine in which is decoct Motherwort or Huggewort.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take Penirial, Policaria, stre leaues of Baye tree, seeth them togeather, and receyue the vapour vnderneath closely.

Item, take Rue, red Motherwort, Sothernwood, beate them together, & temper them with the oyle of Peniriall, and put altogether into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a while tyl it be somewhat sodden together, & then take it of againe, and put it into a litle round linnen bagge, made for the purpose, the whiche with these hearbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomell and Lyne, of eche lyke  
much

The second booke. Fol. lxxvi.

much. iiii. handfulls, bray them together, and see the them with white wine, and then put it in a round bag of linnen, as before was done, and conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two graynes of Muske with wine.

Item, take white Onions, and couer them vnder the hotte ashes, the which when they be well roasted, beate them togeather with freshe Butter vn salted, and make it in maner of a plaster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places as before: in the meane while perfuming the priuie partes with whyte Frankencense and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be bexed about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Muggewort, of eche two handfulls, of woorme wood, Sothern wood, of eche one handfull, of Motherwort thre handfulls, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe on ounce, decocte all these thinges together, and in the water of this decoction, beyng warme, dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, fomenting, looking, and streaking the backe with the same, and so do oftentimes, or els put all these foresayd hearbes togeather sodden in a bagge, and lay it plaster wyse to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle Nardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the which put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to smal powder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anece, oyle of Camomell,

of

## The second booke.

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lillies two ounces, or Ware two drams, dissolve all these together over the fyre, and therewith annoynt the backe.

What remedies  
when the flow-  
ers issue more  
abundantly  
then needeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres issue more vehemently, and in greater abundance then they shoulde, to the great effeblishyng of the woman, and inducyng of much langour and paynefulnesse: then first shal ye note wherupon it commeth, for the cause knowen, the disease may the more redyly be cured: and causes of it be diuers, but most especiall those that folowe, that is to say, Of muche abundant superfluous blood contayned in the whole body, or of muche conmixtion of the cholericke humour and the blood together, by the which the blood is enfiexed and chauffed, & so distendeth, openeth, and letteth abrode the vaynes whiche descende to the Matric.

Also the blood being very thinne and waterish, for so it penetrateth, thrylleteth, and issueth forth the sooner. Also yf the vaynes be very large, and receiue much blood,

The second booke. Fol. lxxvij.

blood, for in that case they sende forth  
the more agayne. And if the Matrix be  
vnmightie and weakened, the baynes  
lyke wylse are weake and large, so that  
they can not retayne nor withholde the  
blood.

And if the body of the woman, or the  
outwarde partes be very dence, close, &  
compact together, so that the outward  
poores be contract and shutte, in suche  
wylse that no vapours or swet can issue  
out at them, then this shall cause the yll  
humours (whiche other wylse woulde  
passe through the pores in swet) to re-  
mayne within the body, and there to  
engender and encrease great fluxe and  
abundaunce of matter, whiche procees-  
deth with the flowres, & augmenteth  
the quantitie of them.

Also yf the baynes of the Matrix be  
(by some chaunce) open & flowe forth,  
as yf the Matrix be perished or other-  
wylse viciate: or yf it chaunce that  
the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath  
been thrust, or beaten, by all and any  
of

## The second booke.

of this meanes may come this inordinate fluxe of flowres.

Good counsel to  
the woman.

Now seeing then that it ensueth by so manyfolde occasions and causes, it shalbe meete that womē in this case be nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose their mynde vnto expert Physicians, shewing them euery thing in it, as they knowe wherevpon it shoulde come, so that the Physician vnderstandyng the womans minde, may the sooner by his learnyng and experience consyder the true cause of it, and the very remedie to amende it. And many thinges there be which cease and restraine this ouermuch flowyng of flowres, both Electuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pouders, Clysters, Oduors, Suffumigations, Bathes, Plasters, and Dyntementes, of whiche for the loue of women I wyl here set forth the most principal and best.

First then to stinte and restrayne the outrageous fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to binde the armes strayght and strongly, and not the feete or handes, as some vnwyle men doo  
teach

teache, and then to set a ventose bore or cupping glasse with fyre (which is called booryng) vnder the brestes, without any scarification, laying also linnen clothes dypped in vineger on the belly betwene the Nauell & the secretes, conueying also into the places suche thynges which haue vertue to restraine blood, as the floure and rinde of Pomegranate, Ambre, Terra Sigillata, Bole Armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis, Hematites, the red Rose, white Frankeuense, & Galles, al those thynges, or as many of them as ye can conueniently get, beate them to powder in lyke portion, and temper them with red wine, making of it a plaster, the which so tempered, put into a lytle rounde bagge, the quantitie of a mans thumbe, the which she shall put into the priue partes.

Item, another plaster, to be ministred lykewyse.

Take of the blood stone, called Hematites, Bole Armeniac, of ech halfe an ounce, Sanguis Draconis, Licium, of ech two drams, Karabe, otherwise named Ambre, the cuppes of Acones, Cipres tree Nuttes, floures of Pomegranate, of eche one dram, of the scales of Iron one dram and a halfe, Turpentine and Witche lyke quantitie, or so much as shalbe sufficient to make a softe and somewhat liquid plaster, beate & bray all these together, temperyng it to a plaster, and then do with it, as ye dyd with the other before.

An oyntment for the same purpose.

Take oyle Martine, oyle of Roses, of eche foure ounces, Karabe, the scrappng of Iuery, the  
 ℞. i. scrappng

## The second booke.

scraping of a goates horne, red Coral, Terra sigillata, white frankencense, of eche (being wel and fynely beaten) two drams, of whyte ware two ounces: all those tempered together, make them in an oymtment, and the re with annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

A bath concernyng the same.

Take Worme wood, Plantaine the more and the lesse, the toppes of vines, freshe braunches of wylde Ruberies, or of the bramble, bnrype Damassons, Sloes, or Bolasse, wyde Peares, Hedlers or Hyspilles, of eche two handfulls, and red Rose leaues two handfulls, of Basies, of all sortes of Thysles, of eche two handfulls, of Cinckfoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne Cuppes, a sawcer full, of Gaules, of Acornes pylled, of Burla pastoris, of eche two handfulls, beate all these to powder, cuttyng and brusyng that that wyl not be beaten to powder, and seethe them togeather in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selte in this water vp to the Navel, and when she commeth forth of the bath, geue her to drinke two drammes of Electuarium Athanasie, or Miclete, with Plantaine water, or if she be sore thirstie, with red wine.

And likewise ye may geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde rose Sugar two ounces, of red Corall, burne Iuery, Bole Armeniacke, of eche two drams, of Hematites  
three



three drammes, beate all these thynges together, tempering it with the rose Sugar, and let her receyue of it in the mornynge and evening, at eche tyme one dram, with fyre spoonefulles of Plantaine water, or els the water of Bursa pastoris.

Item, take of the stone Hematites, and rub it on a Barbers Whetstone, called a Hone, tyll the Hone seeme red, then washe it agayne from the Hone with Plantaine water, and so doo often tymes, but tyll you have a good quantitie of it, and euery mornynge let the woman drinke. iiii. or. v. spoonefulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of Carabe, or Ambre, and the Trochiskes of Bole Armeniacke, which must be ministred a dramme, or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. or. v. spoonefuls of Plantaine water.

Who that requireth further in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Now if it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other diseale in the priuie places after her labour, then must the Apostumes & diseales be cleansed, purged, and healed, the payne and ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berries or leaues of Night-

R. ij.

shade,

## The second booke.

Shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those thinges be tempered together, and the places annoynted therewith.

Item otherwyle. Take the white of an egge, womans myke, the iuyce of Purslaine, & temper all these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostumes. As for the rest, howe to open, drie, and cleanse suche Apostumations, ye must consult with some Physition or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth forth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this businesse, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: wherefore in this case it is the Hydwynes part, with her hande warmed, and wet in white wine, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the whiche yf she can not by this meanes, for because peradventure it be swollen, then

The second booke. Fol. lxxx.

then let her dissolve Butter in Whyte wine warmed, and therein dip wooll, with the which wrap the same gutte a while, so doing oftentimes, tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in agayne. And ye may vse in the steade of white wine luke warme mylke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into this place: Take Ware and melt it together with Masticke or whyte frankensence, then spreade it upon linnen plaster wyse, and lay it ouer the place where it came forth, byndyng it to, with a linnen cloth or roller, for parting of. And let this be done thus so often as she goeth to stoole, after that she hath doone, vntyll suche time that it be so setteled within, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupie Ware: then dyppe wooll in the oyle of Masticke, or of Spyke Rardy, and lay it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. Washe and soke the gut with the water in which is decocte and sodden such thynges which ericate, dry, and constraine or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuts, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Masticke, frankensence, Sanguis Draconis, and when it is well washed & soaked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it agayne

R. iii.

into

The second booke.

into his place.

Agayne, sometyne it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour, the Matrix is remoued out of his place, and appeareth forth: then let it be washed & soaked with the water in whiche be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nuttes, Syphe narde, Balau-  
stium, Acome cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Mel-  
pylles, and vnrype wyld Peares, and vnrype  
Apples, Plummes, and Damsons, or Bullade,  
of eche an handfull. And such of those as be to be  
powdred, beate them to powder, and the rest  
deuyde and cut them small: then seeth them al-  
together in rayne water, or els in water in the  
which Steele beyng red hotte hath been oftent-  
ymes quenched: and in the same water, let the  
partie bathe her by to the Nauell, or els dyppe  
a sponge or a Locke of wooll in it, and there with  
washe and soke the same Matrix oftentymes.  
Then euer with a faire cleane linnen cloth  
wype it cleane agayne, and strewe bypon it the  
powder folowynge, beaten very small, and sear-  
sed throughlylike.

Take of frankensence, Carabe, Galles, Balau-  
stium, Cipres nutts, Aloine, Antimony, Wole ar-  
meniacke, Masticke, of eche like much: beate all  
these to very fine powder, & strewe the Matrix  
with it: then tenderly reduce it into his place a-  
gaine with warme linnen clothes binding it by.

But

The second booke. Fol. lxxxi.

But yf so be that the Matric be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyl not be restored to his naturall place agayne: then dissolve Butter in whyte wine, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometime it chaunceth that the womans Nauell through labour is dissolved, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tent of fine linnen, & annoynt it with this oynment that foloweth, & the same put into the Nauell.

Remedies for the womans Nauell when it openeth it selfe, for payne in the labour.

Take white frankensence, & beate it to powder, & then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid honye, with this annoynt the Nauell within & without, annoynting also the tent, the which being put in the hole of the Nauell, binde some cloth ouer it, to keepe it in his place.

Item, many times it chaunceth that thorow the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priue part and the fundament become one, by reason of rupture and breaking of the same part in the deliuerance of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matric descendeth and flueeth downe, the whiche thynge chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

How that sometyme the priue part and fundament become one.

schilke

R. iij.

the

## The second booke.

the same place is very narrowe and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceedeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this myshappe falleth, fyrst washe and soke the Matric, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediatly before: then heale this bracke & wound by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threede, as Chyrurgians do other woundes: and if that lyke ye not, then may ye cure it otherwyse without sowyng, thus.

Take two lytle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fingers brode, spreade the litle clothes with some fast cleaving plaster, the whiche wyll cause the cloutes to stycke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one syde of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothing appeare betweene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them, but onely the clyft and ryft of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sides of the linnen together close, as before I byd you to sowe the skyn: and when they be thus styched together, lay a lytle liquid  
Pitche

Pitche or Tarre vpon the same. And this done the lappes & sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyl growe together agayne, & heale: and then may ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dzyed, and beate it to powder, also a lytle quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strawe of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of Abortementes, or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holden, and eased.

Capit. vii.



Abortement or vntimely birth is, when the woman is delyuered before due season, and before the fruite be ripe (as in the .iiij. or .v. moneth) before the birth haue lyfe, and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is delyuered before it styre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the which thynges there be many and dyuers causes.

Many causes of vntimely byrthes.

Fyrst, sometymes the mouth of the  
 Matrix

The second booke.

Matric is so large & ample, that it cannot conveniently close it selfe together, neither containe the feature or conception: Or els it may be so corrupted and infected with viscos, stymie, flegmatike, and other waterys humours, that the cavitie or holownesse thereof is therby made so slyppery, that the feature conceived can not there remayne, but slyppeth and slydeth forth agayne. Also sometymes the Matric is apostumated and sore, so that for payne it can not contayne the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotlidons, that is, the vaines by the which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matric (thorowe the which also the feature receyuech nourishment and foode, as is declared in the fyrst booke) be stopped with viscos & yl humours: or els swollen by inflation, so that they breake, by the whiche meanes the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perissheth & dyeth, and that most commonly in the seconde or thyrde moneth

after



after conception. wherefore Hipocrates sayth: All suche Women whiche be impregnate or conceived, being of a meane state in their body (that is to say, neyther to fat or grosse, ne to spare or leane) if it chaunce any such to aborte in the seconde or thyrde moneth (no other evident cause appearynge) knowe ye for certaine, that it ensueth for because the Cotidons be oppiete, stopped, and stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therewith, that they breake, and so consequently the feature dyeth for fault of foode.

Item, aborcement sometyme cometh by reason that some of the places about the matrix be diseased & greued, as if Intestinum rectum, which is called the Fundement gut, be ulcerate, having the pyles or Hemorroides, or the visicke or bladder be swollen or encombred with the stone, the strangury, or other euill. In these cases though the great labour and paine the which the partie hath in endeuorynge & enforcyng her selfe other  
to

Aborcement by reason of some greife about the Matrix.

## The second booke.

to stoole, or to make Water, be engendred great motions downward, whereby many times the handfastnesse of the Cotilidons is broken.

Aborcement by  
Tenasmus.

Also aborcement may come of a disease called Tenasmus, the which is when one hath ever great desyre and lust to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, nevertheless the parties greatly doo enforce and payne them selfe to it. And as Hipocrates sayth, the pregrnaunt woman which hath Tenasmus, for the most part abhorseth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chylde out of tyme.

Aborcement  
through the  
cough.

Item the cough, yf it be greuous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent Whisition sayth: suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, ever more lightly do abort: for because that all the meate and foode the which they receyve, turneth to foode, nourishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes, and so is the conception destitute of foode: wherefore necessarily it dyeth.

Item,

Item, this chaunce also commeth by ouermuch bleeding at the nose, or other where, or issuing of the flowres immoderately. And so sayth Hypocrates, yf the woman yeeld flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature doo long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstand, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and very spare, of if it be after the thyrde moneth, for it may be well, that in the fyrst and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet lytle foode & nourishment satisfieth the conception for the smalenesse thereof.

Item, to be let blood may be the cause of aborcement, whiche must be vnderstande in suche as haue but litle store of blood: but such as haue great copy and plentie of blood, may without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let blood, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seuenth. Howbeit, I would that none should be let blood, except some great and wayghtie cause  
dyd

## The second booke.

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by takyng of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth, and after the seventh moneth.

And if it be so that any necessitie do so require that she must needes receyue a purgation, let it be done betweene the fourth and the seventh moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easie.

And this may come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it bloody or otherwyle, and specially yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and perished. And ouermuch vomityng may be cause of aborcement, for by ouermuch galpyng & reachyng vpwordes, the Cotlidons may be broken, and so the feature to peryshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger, and also sharpe and feruent sycknesse may be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodaine pallsie,

The second booke. Fol. lxxv.

palsie, the falling sicknesse. &c. Also ouer-  
much drunkennes, and excelle feeding  
& surfetting, by the which the byrth  
is suffocate and strangled in the belly,  
and the foode corrupt for lacke of due  
digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any out-  
warde or inwarde cause, or yf the Se-  
condine in the which the featur is con-  
teyned, do breake before his tyme, and  
the humours and waters of the same  
flow & issue forth, causing the place to be  
slippery, and so the byrth to slide away  
butimely: or yf the mother haue taken  
very great cold, or ouer great heat, whi-  
che weakeneth both mother and child.

And therefore ought Women with  
childe to excheue much bathing or go-  
ing to the hot houses in theyr teenyng,  
for that may do hurt three wayes.

Fyrst, that it kyndleth or enflameth  
the ayre or breath contained in the body,  
and so styfleth the childe, and sometime  
the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, &  
looseth

The second booke.

looseth the Collidons, and so maketh the byrth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the viter heate of the bath, entreafeth the inwarde heate of the body : in so much, that the byrth not beyng able to sustaine and abyde the heate, naturally proceedeth for refrigeration & cooling : but in the tyme, or about the tyme of labour, she may vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite deliuerance.

Cause of a  
bozement by  
mutation of the  
weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, may be cause of abozement. For (as Hypocrates wyrteth) whensoever the winter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & dry, suche women in that spring tyde may soone & of a lyght cause haue abozement : Or yf they aboze not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great paine, and the byrth shalbe very weake & sicklye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by & by, it shall proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

For

The second booke. Fol. lxxxvi.

For when that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hot and moyst weather heateth and moysteth the womans body, and by that the body is opened, vnloosed, & resolued, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and bypon this when the spryng time commeth, yf it be colde and drye, findyng the body open and vnloosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the sooner and the more vehemently: & the byrth feelyng the sodayne colde and chaunge of weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered: or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to keepe lyfe in it.

Item, aborcement may happen by ouer muche styring of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leapyng, or by some fall or thrust agaynst some wall, or beating, or by some sodaine anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodaine and vnlooked for ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche mo ste com-

Di

monly

The second booke.

monly maye ensue aborcement or vntymely byrth, the whiche no doubt is much more greefe and paine to the woman, then the very natural labour, for such thynges as chaunce to man or woman contrary to nature, or before nature doth require it, is farre greater greefe, then the same happenyng and comyng in his due sealon.

Signes wherby ye may foresee aborcement.

Tokens to foresee aborcement.



When the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to goe before. Fyrst her brests which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to waxe lesse, to fal, and to flagge, and then ever for the most part aborcement foloweth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, which before was in good lykynge, the other remainyng sounde and safe, then loke of what side the brest is of, and the chyld of that syde is in peryll. wherfore Hypocrates wyteth, yf the ryght brest flake or flagge, the masculyne or  
male



male byrth is in peryl: yf the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is maſculine, and the other feminine: the man lyeth in the ryght ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Alſo another ſigne of aborcement is: when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, and that ſhe begyn to ware redde in the face, and all partes of the body to ſhake & tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palſie in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braines, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a weermes, without any outward apparant cauſe why: theſe thynges portende and ſignifie aborcement to be at hande, ſpecially yf at the ſame tyme the flowres iſſue alſo.

Item yf the womans body do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardneſſe or ſtiffneſſe, and that ſhe feele ſtytches, and as it were ventofitie or wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

The second booke.

to the other, and yet the belly notwithstanding, being nothing the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do persist and continue anye whyle, the woman takyng and eatyng suche thynges whiche haue vertue to discusse and vanquish ventositie and wyndynesse: this thyng I say dooth betoken peryll of aborcement through ventositie and inflation, and that cheefely about the thyrde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be provided and foreseene the aborcement before it come. Nowe wyl I shew you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies  
whereby to a-  
uoyde abor-  
cement.

The cheefe remedie to auoyd aborcement is, to shun al such thynges whiche may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of alre dye: but yf ye feare aborcement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,

large, then must ye vse suche thynges whose operation is to contrahē, constrainē, and bring together, as Bathes, Fumigations, Dyntmentes, Plasters, Odours, and suche lyke, of the whiche I haue spoken before, and such thynges the which repressē and stynte the flow-ers flowyng ouer muche after the byrth.

Agayne, yf ye feare this peryll, because the mouth of the Matrix is moyst and slipperie, other because that the collidons be replete and fulfilled with viscos humours, and with inflations or ventosities: then may ye defende it by vsing of suche thynges whose qualities be to purifie, clense, exicate, or drye, and to repressē ventosities, whereof also we haue made mention here before.

Howbeit, in all this matter, let not to make some expert phisition of your counsayle, yf ye may haue suche one, for because that many suche thynges come, and not all by one way or meane.

And yf ye doubtē peryll for because

## The second booke.

that the Matrix or other places about  
be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate,  
or hauyng the stone or strangury, and  
suche other thynges: then aske and vse  
the aduise of some well learned medi-  
cine, and he shall shewe you howe all  
thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare aborcement be-  
cause the partie is very weake and low  
brought, then let her feede on such thin-  
ges the whiche moysten and nourryshe  
wel or fatten the bodi, as Capons fleshe,  
Kid, Lamme, young Veale, Partridge,  
and such other.

Agayne, yf the woman be taken with  
any sharpe and fell disease, then let her  
be cured of the same as shortly as can  
be, with such thynges the which apper-  
tayne to the curyng of such disease: or yf  
she haue susteyned any long famine or  
hunger, then let her be fedde with good  
meates and drinkes moderately taken:  
and yf she haue surfatted by ouermuche  
eatynge and drynkyng (as nowe a-  
dayes most commonly people do) then  
let

let her abstayne for a tyme, and if it may be conuenientlye done, let her receaue some easy and gentle medicine, whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfettyng burthen, especially by vomittynge, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of water luke warme, wherin hath ben sodden two sponesfuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, with her fynger or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in blood, then shall it be very good a litle to let her blood, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thowwe ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangeled: of the whiche thing also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare aborcement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbreakyng, or the fluxe, or of the disease called Tenasmus, or of ouermuche issuyng

## The second booke.

of blood, whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduise of a Physitian for remedie, yf for the fragilitie, tenderesse, and bracke of the secundine, she feare this aborcement, for because that in this case the secundine shall not be able to holde and contayne the byrth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that shee hurt not herselfe by ouermuch mouyng or stirryng, as by labouryng, daunsing, runnyng, standyng, faste goyng, or carryng of ponderous and wayghtie thinges, or lystyng of the same. And to be short, let her with all warynesse take heede and be diligent that she excheue and abstayne from all suche thynges the whiche myght cause and induce aborcement.

Of dead birthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowne, and by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix.

It

**I**shalbe nowe conuenient for vs to speake of dead birthes, howe it shalbe knowen that they be dead, and howe they may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to know whether the childe be dead in the mothers wombe.

Signes then that the byrth is dead in the mothers wombe, be these.

- i. First, yf the mothers brestes do suddenly flake, as I touched before.
- ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng wont before to styre.
- iii. If when the mother turneth her from the one side to y other, she feele it falling from thone side to the other like a stone, or a dead wayght.
- iiii. If her belly and nauyll begyn to waxe colde, which before was wont to be temperately hotte.
- v. If any stynkyng and fylthye humours flowe from the Matrix, and cheefely after some fell disease.
- vi. If the womans eyes waxe holow, & that her colour chaunge from whyte to swart and dunne colour, and that her eyes and nose waxe astonyed, and haue

The second booke.

haue not their ryght vse, and her lippes  
waxe wanne.

vii. If beneath the Nauell and about  
the secrete partes she feele great thronge  
& payne, the colour of her face chaunge  
yng into worse and worse, otherwylse  
then it was wont to do.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche  
thynges whiche be agaynst nature, and  
not wont to be eaten or drunken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with  
bayne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye with  
the strangurye, or that she enforce her  
selfe much to the stoole, and with al her  
power, and yet can not do any thing.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the  
whiche thyng lightly happeneth two  
or thre dayes after the birth be dead.

xii. If the handes put into very warme  
water, and then layde on the womans  
belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe  
that it is dead.

Of all these signes nowe, the more  
that come together of them at one  
time



tyne and in one person, the surer may ye be that the birth is dead, the which beyng once dead, all diligence muste be hadde that it may be expelled out of the womans body.

But here must ye see agayne whether it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe saued or no: for sometyme it chaunceth that the Mother dyeth withall, and sometymes the Mother doth well and prospereth.

Whether the Mother shalbe in perill withall, or no, by these thynges shall ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the labour sowe or feare, as though she were in a traunce: if her remembraunce fayle her, and she were feeble and scant able to moue or stirre her selfe: yf she (called with a loude voyce) can aunswere nothyng at all, or els verye litle, and that very softly, as though her voyce began to fayle her: if she be inuaded or taken among in the labouryng with conuulsion or shynkelyng together: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:

To knowe whether the mother shalbe in perill or no.

yf

## The seconde booke.

yf her pulces beate very fast, the which signes whē ye see in the woman labouryng, it is an evident token that she shal not lyue long after her deliuerance, wherfore commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but yf none of these signes doo appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shall do wel, the byrth beyng once departed: wherfore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be deliuered of this dead burden, the whiche thying maye be done by two wayes, eyther be medicines expulsive, or els be certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two meanes  
to expel the  
dead birthes.

fyrst withoute instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Ass, and put it on coles, and let the woman receaue the fume vnderneath.

Another.

Take the skinne of an Adder, Myrre, Castoriū, Brimstone, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, Madder that the Diers occupie, Pigeōs donge, or Hawkes donge, beate al these to powder, & temper the with Dre gal, & make pylles of it, eche the quantitie of a fylberde nutte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receiue the fume thro-  
rowe a pype or conduite made for that purpose  
into the priuities.

Another. Take Encense, Oppoponacum, Galba-  
num, Brimstone, of eche like muche, beate them  
together, and temper them with Dre gall, and  
make pilles of them, and then of the same make  
fumigations as before.

A posion for the same purpose. Take Asafetida  
halfe a dram, of Rue thre drams, of Myrche two  
drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to  
the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder  
with white wine, or with water in the whiche  
Sauine is sodden.

Another. Take figges, fenegreke, Organie,  
and seethe them in water, the whiche geue vnto  
the woman to drynke: for this drynke wyll en-  
gender lubricitie and slyppernesse in the neather  
partes, and vble also some of those thynges which  
haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we  
entreated before.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries con-  
cerning the same. Take Gumme, Ammoniacke,  
Oppoponacum, Heleborus niger, Staphisager,  
Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthis without his  
kerneles, beate all these thinges together, tempe-  
ring them with Dre gal, and also with the iuyce  
of fresh Rue, then make a pessarie of wollen, and  
annoynt and wet the pessarie with the same,  
conueying it into the secreete places.

Item another. Make a pessarie of wollen, of  
the length and thickeesse of a fynger, and dyppe  
it

## The second booke.

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolved a quantitie of Scammonie, and doo with that pessarie as before.

Item, take Aristolochia rotunda, Sauiue, garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Oxe gall, with this annoynt a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drynke the mylke of another woman, it wyll styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe, two drams, and geue the same to drynke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shal ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shal expell the dead byrth without anye peryll of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrre foure drammes, of Cinnamon, Galbanum, Castorium, of eache two drams, of Oppoponacum, one dramme, all those beaten & tempered together with Oxe gal, make pilles of them, waying eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the neather partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of blood is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sothernwood, Mugwurt, of eche a handfull, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomel, Horehounde, fenegreke, of eche two ounces, seethe al these thynges togeather in  
raine

The second booke. Fol. ciii.

rayne water, in the which let the woman bath her selfe: then take of Hennes grece and Duches grece, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche ad two ounces of oyle of Dyll seede, with this opntment annoynt the womans head commyng out of the bath, then take Date stones, and beate them to powder, a dramme and an halfe, with a scruple of Saffron tempered togeather with whyte wyne, the whiche let her inmediatele drynke after she come forth of the bath.

Item, take Oppoponacum, and make thereof a pessarye, the quantitie of a fynger, conuey it into the priuities, this expelleth the dead byrth.

Item, take of Galbanum a dram or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the Galbanum beyng dissolved, geue it to the woman to drynke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take Galbanum beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Motherwort, and of this make a plaster by puttyng to of ware a certayne quantite: then take a linnen cloth of suche length and breadth that it may couer al the belly vnder the Naveli to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this cloth spreade this plaster of the thiknesse of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called Diatessarum, & geue of it to the woman for to drynke, and it wyll expel the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profyte not, then  
must

## The second booke.

musste be bled more seuerer and harde remedies with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and suche other thynges made for the nonce. And fyrste the woman musste be layde a long bypryght, the middle parte of her bodye lying hyer then all the rest, accompanied of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to keepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she ryle not withall. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her lefte hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other that may make it supple and smothe, and holding out her fingers, shutting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix, to feele and perceyue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hokes, and suche other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

If so be that it lye the head forwarde, then fasten a hooke eyther bypon one of the eyes of it, or the roofe of the mouth, or vnder the chin, or on one of the shoulders, whiche of these partes shall seeme mooste commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderlye for hurtyng of the woman.

But if it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priue partes, or by some rybbe, or some of the backe bones, or of the brest bones: and when this hooke is thus fastened, the midwyfe may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte hande.

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other part of the byrth, ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her drawe both together, so that the byrth may proceede and come forth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotten out altogether, and nowe and then to helpe it in the comyng forth with the foresynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to stycke, or to be lette any where: and as it commeth forth, alway to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes only of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bywarde againe, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth that it styppe not by agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyl such time that the whole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cut it of from the body: and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrst at once, or one legge, or both, yf they can not be returned backe to be otherwyse taken out conueniently. As ye cutte the armes from the shoulders, so lyke wyse cuttyng the legges from the thighes, for the which purpose the Chirurgians haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which such legges & armes may soone be cut from the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cut from the body, then turne the rest, so that it may easely proceede, with as lytle payne to the mother as may be.

## The second booke.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyl not conveniently issue out at that narrow place: Then let the Midwyfe with a sharpe penknife cutte open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to waxe lesse, able to be plucked out: But if it be so, that (not by any suche casualtie) the head be bygge but onely of a naturall growth, then must the head be broken in peeces, and the partes euermore taken forth with suche instrumentes as the Chirurgians haue redy and necessary for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the brest part woulde not folowe for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lykewyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lykewyse yf all the rest of the body shoulde be so swollen that it woulde not proceede ne come forth: then must it lykewyse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

Furthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be excoriated or appostumate, so that the passage be made the narrower by that meanes, the dyer, and the more contract: then must ye fyrst studie and endeuour you to supple and ease the places by oyles and other greaces, suche as I spake of sufficiently befoze in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also yf the dead byrth come sydelong, then  
must



The second booke. Fol. rcb.

must ye do what may be done to conuert and turne it to suche fasbyon, that it may most easily be brought forth. The Matrix and other secretes must be annoynted, perfumed, and hapoured with suche thynges the which may make it more ample and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cutte out by peece meale, as is before spoken of. And yf after this deliuerance the flowres issue ouer vehemently, then vse suche thynges as haue vertue to restryne them, of the whiche I haue spoken in the .vi. Chapter before.

But contrary to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chylde hauyng lyfe in it: then shall it be meete to keepe open the womans mouth, and also the neather places, so that the chylde may by that meanes both receyue and also expell ayre and breath, whiche otherwyse myght be stopped, to the destruction of the chylde. And then to turne her on the left syde, and there to cut her open, and so take out the chylde. They that be borne after this fasbyon are called Cesars, for because they be cutte out of their mothers

belly: whereupon also the noble

Romayne Cesar the fyrst

toke his name.

## The second booke.

**I**n the last Chapter of this booke be briefly recited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the chiefe purpose intended in this present booke. Cap. x.



Asomuche as the principall entent and ende of this booke is, to shewe the meanes and medicines whereby the womans labour may be made the more easie : therefore here I wyll compendiously set forth certayne medicines, oyntmentes and emplasters, suche as shalbe sufficient and mooste requisite to that purpose, and suche agayne as hath been well experimented and practised : The whiche also it shalbe convenient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in a redynesse agaynst theyr tyme of neede. For although that Nature be the chiefe and head doer in all this businesse (as in conception, bearing, and the byrth :) yet notwithstanding, medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and fortifie Nature, beyng sometime impedit and let, yea, impotent and not able to do her office as should appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour is come, yf she labour long and paynefully, and yet the byrth do not proceede: then for the more expedite and quicke delyueraunce, geue her of this medicine folowynge.

Take of the fynest Cinamome that may be chosen

The second booke. Fol. xcvi.

chosen. iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe  
fyrst shred it in very small peeces, and then beate  
it to very fyne powder.

Item, of Saffron dyed by the fyre tyll it be  
blackyshe, of Cassia lignea, fyne Keubarde, Sa-  
uine dried, Myrre, of ech of these seuen scruples,  
of pure Muske. xvi. graynes, euery of these sim-  
ples exquisitely by them selues powdered, & then  
perfectly myxed in one, with. vi. oz. vii. droppes  
of Maluese, temper the whole masse into lytle  
roundels or trochiskes, eche waying a dramme.  
And in tyme of neede at the womans labour,  
geue her hardly the wayght of. vi. d. of these tro-  
chiskes beaten into fine powder, with. iiii. spon-  
fulles of Hylope water, and other. iiii. of good  
wine secke.

This medicine is not onely profitable at this  
tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notably  
good to expell the after byrth, or any other suche  
lyke matter in that place, hauyng neede of ex-  
pultion.

Item, yf neede do so require, it shalbe very  
expedient to haue this emplaster folowynge in  
a redinesse, the which spread abroad vpon a lyn-  
nen cloth either els vpon leather, and so applied  
to the bottome of the belly in as large maner  
as may be, dilateth and openeth the pores of  
that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth, & dissolurth  
them, whereby that that is contained in the bel-  
lye syndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greuaunce  
of the mother.

Take of Emplastrum de Melliloto, of Diachilon,

p. iiii.

of

## The second booke.

of Oxycroccum, of ech two ounces, of the rootes of Asarum, of wyldc Pepper dreyed, the leaues of Bemioim, of tosted Cummin, of eche two drams, of good Castorium .iii. drams, of the oyle of Wyll one or two spoonefulles: such of these as are to be powdered, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaster may serue to be layde ouer all the boitome of the belly and the priuie passage, to prouoke and drawe forth the latter or hynder byrth yf neede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then lay to this plaster following, which is of muche more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Seraphinū, Myrre, of eche an ounce, of Colloquintida, Heleborus niger, of eche two drams, of Castorium, Perethrum, & Storax liquida, of ech thre drams, of Turpentine and Petroleum, of eche foure drammes. Fyrt ouer a soft fyre temper the Turpentine, Petroleum, & Storax liquida, together, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Heleborus, Castorium and Perethrum, beyng fyrt well and fynely beaten to powder: after put to the Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum and Myrre, beyng fyrt dissolved in good Maluesey, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effecte to prouoke the after byrth.

Item, vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layed plasterwyle to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item,

The second booke. Fol. xcviij.

Item, the leaues or flowres of Marygoldes drunke with whyte wine, exzell the after byrth. Also the sayde leaues and flowres dyled, and at tyme of neede, kyndled with a ware candle, and the fume thereof receyued vnderneath into the priue part, prouoketh out marueylously the after byrth.

Item, a comfortable potion, to be taken after the deliuerance of the chyld.

Take of the sweetest garden Myntes, greene or dry, of the leaues of Baume, greene also or dry, of the leaues of Maioram, the rootes of fennell, the pyth taken out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemarie, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dyled red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, more or lesse as it pleaseth you, of Cloues and Gase brused a litle, the wayght of two pence, of Cinamome shredde in small portions the wayght of vi. groles, knyrt all these together in a cloute or litle linnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quart of Borage water the space of a day and a nyght: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wine Secke, or els Muscadell: and beyng myxt together, put thereto a litle of the conserue of Barberies, conserue of Borage flowres, conserue of Rosemarie flowres, and drynke hereof euery day the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure spoonefulles of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wyne. And this potion shall both comforte the woman, and also helpe

The second booke.

greatly to the expulcion of all noysome thynges  
to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where  
as it is a common vlsage to geue often to women  
in their chyldbed caudels of Otemeale, thyn-  
kyng and sayng thereby the woman to be scou-  
red, whereas in deede the sayde Otemeale is a  
notable bynder and dryer. Therefore ye shall vn-  
derstande, that the ryght vse thereof is, to geue it  
to such as haue already been well and sufficiently  
scoured and cleansed from theyr after byrth, and  
other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and  
case: but yf the woman be not sufficiently pur-  
ged already, then geue her no Otemeale caudels,  
ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the wo-  
men readers hereof, to accept and suffise them  
selues with these fewe medicines here in this  
Chapter mentioned, and often by me and other  
practised. The which thyng yf they shall do so, it  
shall (no doubt) be occasion to me the sooner to  
retake this matter in hande agayne, and to re-  
fresh and furnishe the same with new and much  
more excellent experiences then hath been yet  
hytherto read or seene in any booke concerning  
such matters.

And as touching the aboue Trochiskes and em-  
plasters described here in this place, ye shall  
fynde them alwayes redy made  
in Bucklers berie in  
London.

In this first Chapter of the thirde booke, is first declared the matters therein conteyned, and then how the Infant newly borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i.



In the seconde Booke we haue sufficientlye and at length declared the maners, fashions, and diuersities of byrthes, with the daungers & per-

*What is to be done when the chylde is borne.*

rylles often chaunsyng to the women at theyr labours, and after the same. And now here in this thirde booke shall be entreated what is to be done to the Infant borne. And howe to choose a Nurse, and of her office: with manyfolde medicines and remedies agaynst sundry infirmities, which estsones happen to Infantes in their infancie.

Then after that the Infant is once come to lyght, by and by the Nauell must be cutte three syngers breadth from the belly, and so knyted vp, and let be strued on the head of that that remaineth, of the powder of Bole Armentacke, & Sanguis draconis, Sarcocola, Myrthe, & Cummin, of eche lyke muche beaten to powder: then vpon that binde a peece of wool, dypped in oyle Oliue that

The thirde booke.

that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrst to knyrt the Nauell, and after to cutte it so much, as is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some say, that of what length the rest of the Nauell is left, of the same length shall the chyldes tong be, yf it be a man chyld. Hieron, Auicenna sayth, that diuers thinges may be knowen by markyng of the chyldes Nauell: For (as he saith) When the woman is deliuered of her fyrst chyld, then behold the Nauell of the chyld: Which yf in that part of it whiche is next vnto the body it haue neuer a wrinkle, it proferendeth & doth signifie perpetuall fruit thenceforth sterilitie or barenesse: and yf it haue any wrinkles in it, then so many wrinkles, so many chyldren shall the woman haue in tyme to come. Also some ad to this, and say, that if there be lytle space betweene these wrinkles in the Nauell, then shall there be also litle space betweene the bearing of the chyldren: if much, it signifieth long time betweene the bearyng of them: but these sayinges be neyther in the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.

Now



## The thirde booke.

## Fol. xxv.

Now to returne to our purpose, when that the Nauell is cut of, and the rest knyt by: annoynt all the chyldes body with the oyle of Acornes, for that is singularly good to confyrme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, whiche may chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and such other thynges: which yf the Infante be greued withall strayght after the byrth, beyng yet very tender, it shoulde hurt it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your fynger (the nayle beyng pared) open the chyldes nosethryls, and purge them of the fylthenesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes syttyng place, that it may be prouoked to purge the belly. And chiefly it must be defended from ouermuche cold, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knot of the Nauell is fallen (the which commonly chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth day) then on the rest remaynyng, strew the powder or Ashes of a Calles hooft burnt, or of Snayle shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wine.

Furthermore, when the Infante is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and heede that she bynde euery part ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tendernesse and gentle entreatyng, and not crookedly and confusely, the whiche also

## The thirde booke.

also must be done oftentimes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in young and tender ympe, plantes, and wygges: the which, even as ye bowe them in their youth, so wyl they evermore remaine vnto age. And even so the Infant, yf it be bounde and swadled, the members lying ryght and strayght, then shall it grow strayght and byryght. If it be crookedly handled, it wyl growe lyke wyse. And to the yll negligence of many Nurces, may be imputed the crookedness, and deformitie of many a man and woman, which other wyse myght seeme as well favoured as any other.

By the onely  
neglygence of  
Nurces many  
chylde groweth  
crooke backed,  
and wy legged

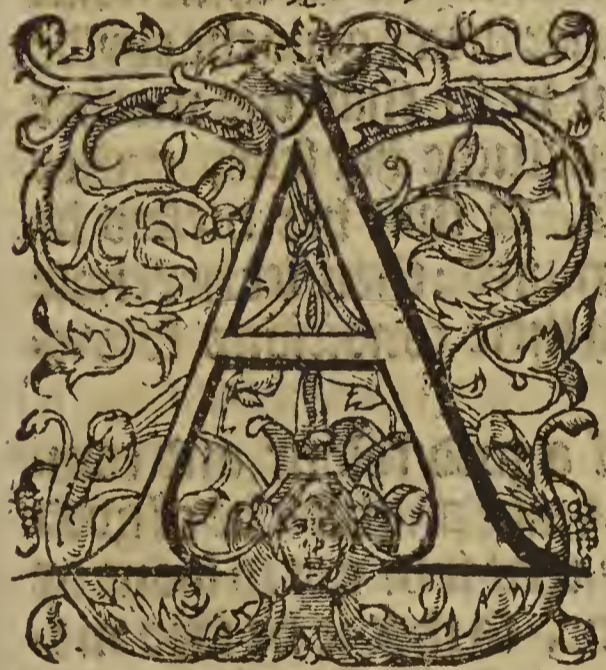
Item, let the chylde's eyes be oftentimes wypped and cleansed with a fine and cleane linnen cloth, or with sylke. And let the armes of the Infant be very strayght layde downe by the sydes, that they may growe ryght, and sometyme strokyng the belly of the chylde, before the besycke or bladder, to helpe to ease, & to prouoke the chylde to the makynge of water: and when ye lay it in the Cradell to sleepe, sette the Cradell in suche a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head ever somewhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed two or three tymes in the day, & that anon after sleepe, in the winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with iuke warme water: neither let it tary long in the water, but vnto suche tyme as the body begyn  
to

to ware red for heate, but take hede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearing another way.

Then, to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dried with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to lay it on her lappe the backe vpwarde, the whiche with her handes let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it vp, and to swaddell it, and when it is swaddled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nosethylls of it, is very good for the eyesyght. And so to lay it to rest.

Of the Nurse and her mylke, and how long the chylde should sucke. Cap. ii.



**S** concerning the brynging vp, nourishment, and geuyng of sucke to the chylde, it shalbe beste that the mother geue her chylde sucke her selfe, for the mothersmilke is more conueniente & agreeable to the Infant, then any other womans, and more doth it nouryshe it, for because that in the mothers belly it was wont to the same, and fed with it, and therefore also it doth more desyrously couet the same, as that with the which it is best acquainte. And to be short, the mothers mylke is most hollommest for the chylde.

The mothers mylke best and most familler is the chylde.

## The thirde booke.

chylde, as Auicenna wryteth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twice or thryse in a day. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloyng of it, and least also it loth it: but rather let it haue often of it, and lytle at once, then fewe tymes, and ouermuche at once. For sucke as be ouer cloyde with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr body to swell & inflate, and in theyr brine shall it appere, that it is not overcome ne concocted or digested in the chylde: which thyng yet if it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyll such time as that which it hath receyued already be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe or choleryke, let her neuer geue the chylde her brest fastyng. If it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sycknesse, or that her brestes be sore, and her mylke corrupted: then let her chosse a holosome Nurse, with these conditions folow- yng.

To chosse a good Nurse.

First, that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and brest be of good largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to soone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two moethes after her labour at the least, and that (yf it may be) sucke one whiche hath a man chylde. Thyrddly, that she be of meane and measurable lykng, neyther to fatte ne to leane. Fourthly, that she be good and honest of conuersation, neyther ouer hastie or yrefull, ne to sadde or so-  
lome,

come, neyther to fearefull or tymorous: for these affections and qualities be pernicious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe forth through the mylke into the chylde, makinge the chylde of lyke condition and maners. Also that they be not ouer lyght and wanton of behauiour. fyfthly, that her brestes be full, and haue sufficient plentie of mylke, and that they be neyther to great, soft, hangyng, and flaggyng, ne to lytle, hard, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also looke vppon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, gray, or reddysh, neyther so-  
wer, sharpe, saltysh, or brackyshe, neyther thynne  
and fluy, neyther ouer grosse & thicke, but tem-  
perately whyte, and pleasaunt in taste.

The considera-  
tion of the  
Nurses mylke.

And to be short, that mylke is best and most to be chosen, of the whiche a droppe beyng myl-  
ked softly vpon the nayle of the thumbe, holding  
your fynger styll, it rolleth not of, neyther flyt-  
teth abroade, but yf ye moue your hande a lyt-  
tle it wyll flyde of by and by: but yf when it is  
mylked on the nayle it spreade abroade, and flyt  
by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styll  
when that ye moue a lytle your hande, then is it  
to spylle and thicke. The meane betweene both  
is best.

If it be so that the Nurses mylke be to hotte,  
sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the  
chylde sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometymes it chaunceth that the mothers  
or Nurses mylke doth fayle or decrease, the  
whiche

## The thirde booke.

Diarrhoea  
of the defect of  
layling of milke

which thyng may come by dyuers causes: as by sicknesse, by disease in the brestes, or by takyng of cold in the same, and so stoppe and cludder the milke, or for because she lacketh such thinges the which myght engender mylke, other by ouer-much fastyng, hunger, & thyrst, the which causes must be well consydered: and then accordyng to that, minister a remedie.

Things which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Let her vse to eat Parsenyp, eyther the seede or the roote: also the seede or roote of fenyll, sodden in the broth made with Barley or Cicer-cula, let her eat of that with other meates that she feedeth on.

Item, to eat sheepes brestes, and the mylke of them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dissolve it in warme white wine, the which let the Nurse drynke.

Item, boryng vnder the brestes doth well, without scarification.

Item, a plaster for the same of frankencense, Masticke, and Witche, layde to the brestes, or vnder the brestes, the skynne fyrst being annoynted with oyle, least it shoulde cleaue ouer fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe very good to rubbe softlye with the hande the brestes, or els in bathyng after dinner or supper, to cause some to sucke her brest.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or of violettes, and myngle with it Muske, Censence,  
and

and Laudanum, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of wooll, and clappe it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item, washe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the whiche is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, Violettes, and Xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Hen, with Cinamome, Maces, Cardamomum, & also the yolke of an egge.

Item, it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also pottage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fyne flowre, tempred with Milke and Suger, puttyng to it also a quantitie of fenel seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item, take of Annis seede, of Silermontanū, of eche thre drams, of Christall beaten to powder two drams, & as muche of Suger, geue her this to drynke about ten dayes, at moornyng, euening, and midday.

Item, take of fenell seede, or the leaues, & of Horehounde, of eche two handfulls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Saffron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter thre ounces, and seethe all these in sufficient water, makyng hereof a plaster, the same plaster whilest it is hot, lay it to the Nurses breste.

Item, take of Commin seede an ounce and an halfe, of clarified Hony thre ounces, seethe it in fyue pynthes of water, altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seeth to the thyrde part, and

## The thyrde booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse often tymes to drynke.

Item, take of Beetes well washed one ounce, of commin halfe an ounce, of Honye syre ounces, of these myngled and tempred togeather, make an electuarie, of the whiche let her take both in the morning and euenyng, at eche tyme a spoonefull.

Item, take two drams of Crystall beaten into fyne powder, and deuide that in foure equal partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, or elles of peason.

Also all these thynges folowynge encrease and augment Mylke in the breaues: Annis and Annis seede, Dyll and the seede, Horehounde, Cardamomum, freshe Cheese, wortes made of olde Cheese, Cicer, Cristall beatē to powdered, & taken with Honye, Lettuse, fenel, wyne in which Rosemary or Sauery be sodden.

Item, to abstayne from venery or mans company: for yf she vse that, it shall spende and consume the mylke, and make it vn-sauery and vn-hollsome, neyther can the chylde well brooke it, but mooste commonly shal caste it by agayne, because it can not digest it.

Also it shalbe beste that the chylde sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womans, for a day or two, for because that the creame (as they call it) strayght after the byrth, the fyrst day



In al women doth thicken and congeale.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer  
 sore lashed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that  
 she take anye medicine: to remedie it: then let  
 another geue the chylde sucke whylest she be  
 recouered agayne. And when the chylde is layde  
 in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste  
 through ouermuche rockyng and styrryng, the  
 chylde's stomache turne, and the Mylke there  
 corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseyth to geue the chylde sucke two  
 yeaues: howebeit amonge vs mooste common-  
 ly, they sucke but one yere. And when ye wyl  
 weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a lytle  
 and a litle, and to make for it lytle pylles of  
 breade and Suger to eate, and accustome it so,  
 tyl it be able to eate all maner of meate: and  
 this shall suffice for the education and brynging  
 vp of infantess at this tyme. Not withstanding  
 dyuers other thynges here are left vnspoken of,  
 another tyme God wylling we shal declare them  
 at large.

Howe long the  
 chylde should  
 sucke.

Of diuers diseases and infirmities whiche  
 chaunce to chyldeyn lately borne, and the  
 remedies therfore. Cap. iiii.



Although there be in ma-  
 ner infinite diseases which  
 happen to Infantess, as  
 wyteth Hipocrates, Galenus,  
 Q ii Rafis,

Many diseases  
 of Infantess.

## The thyrde booke.

Racis, Auicenna, and diuers other : yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here onely suche of them whiche moſte commonly happen to the ſame, & that be theſe : exulceration of the gummes, fixe of the belly, or ouermuch looſenes of the ſame, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the cough, and diſtillation of the head, ſhort wyndynes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clypping of the mouth, apoſtume in the eares, apoſtume in the brayne, ſwellyng and botnyng of the eyes, ſcumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, gnawing in the bellye, the body ſwellyng and puffed vp, often ſneeing, wheales or bladders of the body, ſwellyng of the coddies, ſwellyng of the ſtrawyl, vnſleepineſſe, yering, appetite to parbreake, fearefulneſſe in the dreames, the mother, iſſuing out of the fundament gutte, wormes in the bellye, chaufyng, the falling ſickneſſe, the conſumption, the palsye, trembling of the partes of the body, the ſtone, goggle eyes.

How

Howe to cure and to remedie all these, nowe  
wyl I shewe in order.

Firste in exulceration of the gummes, are  
wont certayne pushes, and as it were whea-  
les to growe on the gummes, or in the cor-  
ners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to  
muche greouance: and to remedie this, it shalbe  
good that ye with your synger rubbe the infan-  
tes gummes, and the pushes or whelkes withal,  
and then to annoynt the same gummes with  
oyntment made of Venes grece, Hares or Co-  
nyes brayne, oyle of Camomel mixt with hony:  
then take water, and in it seethe Camomell and  
Dyl, the whiche water beyng hotte, powre it  
on the chyldes head, holding it a foote aboue the  
head.

Of exulceration  
of the gums.

Of the fluxe and ouermuch loosenes  
of the belly.

For this take the seede of Koses, Comin, An-  
nise, & the seede of Smalage, beate all these  
together, and make them plaster wyle, and  
lay it to the chyldes belly.

For the flux in  
chylden.

And farther, yf that it which the Infant boy,  
deth be of redde or yelow colour, then geue it  
to drynke of the syrope of Koses, or of Crabbes,  
other els of Pomegranates, tempred with a li-  
tle Mynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorrell, and beate it,  
then temper it together with the yolke of a

Q. iiii. roasted

## The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the chyld to eate, or els take of the same seede bruised fyrst, and then seeth it in sayre runnyng water, thereof let the chyld drynke two or thre tymes the day.

Item, take a gal, and beate it to powder, then seethe it in water, with this water temper Barlye meale, or the meale of Mellium, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chyldes bellye.

Item, yf that that commeth from the chyld be whytyshe, then take of Nutmeges the weyght of a peny, and of whyte frankencense a scruple, or the waight of two pence, the whiche temper with the iuyce of a Quince, & geue it to the chyld to drynke.

Item, take the meale of Barlye, temper it with the iuyce of Plantane, and a lyttle gingeer, and make it plaster wyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly, but beyng fyrst a lyttle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of Centinodium, and the whyte of an egge, & temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dyed red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Mastike, frankencense, Bole Armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis, & the rynes of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chyld with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce of  
of

The thirde booke. Fol. Cb.

of Plantane the more and the lesse, and in this  
put clay of an olde furnace or ouer, and make  
of it a plaster, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

To vntose the chyldre beyng bounde.

If the chyldre be so bounde, that it can not long  
tyme haue any stooke, then make a suppositary  
of Hony, sodden tyl it be harde and massye, and  
let the suppositarye be of the length of your litle  
fynger, and the bygnesse of two wheate straws  
bounde togeather, then dip it into oyle, & conuey  
it into the chyldes fundament.

Item, lyke wyse you may make a suppositary of  
the stalk and the roote of Beetes, or els of the  
roote called Dresse, or flouredeluce roote, made  
of the quantitie before spoken, and conueyed into  
the sitting place of the chyldre.

Item, to geue to the infant as muche Honie  
as a pease to drynke, and to rubbe the belly a ly-  
tle, and to supple it with a peece of wooll dypped  
in oyle, or dypped in Bulles gall, and layd to the  
Navel.

Item, you may geue vnto the Nurse a medi-  
cine which hath bertue to vnbrynde and loose,  
and the next day after let the chyld sucke her, and  
it wyl loose also the chyldre.

Item, take of smal Malloves, of great Mal-  
lowes, of eche an handfull, of fenegreke & Line-  
seede of eche an ounce, of Holyoke two ounces, of  
figges the number of .x. seethe al these togeather  
in water, and then stampe them in a mortar, and

## The thirde booke.

put vnto it of Butter, and of Hennes grece, of eche two ounces, and of Saffron one scruple, and make a plaster of it vpon a linnen cloth, of the thickeſſe of a ſtraw, and lay it to the chyldes belly, a day and a nyght.

If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes Cicotrine one dram, of Helebores both niger & albus, of eche .xv. graynes, beate theſe to powder, then temper them with three ſpoonefulls of the iuyce of Malwurt, or of Ore gall, in this licour dippe wooll, and lay it to the Navel the breadth of a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwurt, and of Mill meale, and ſeethe thoſe togeather tyll they be thicke, then make a plaster thereof, and lay it to the belly beneath the Navel.

### Remedie for the crampe, or diſſention of members

If it chaunte that the infant be taken with the diſeaſe called the crampe, the whiche for the moſt part commeth of indigeſtion, and of the weakeneſſe of the power attractiue, and ſpecially in ſuche chyldren the whiche be verie fat and moyſte, then ſhal ye annoynt al along the backe of the infante with the oyle of blew flourezed-luce or els white Lillies, eyther the oyle of Rue,

If the crampe take the chyld whileſte it ſtrecheth forth the armes, legges, and other members (as we be wont in gaping or yaning) then let

The thirde booke. Fol. Cvi.

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the  
whiche prime Roses, Coufloyes, or the flowres  
of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with  
the oyle of Violettes, and the oyle of sweete Al-  
mons tempered together: and if the chylde be in  
great heate, annoynt hym with the oyle of vio-  
lettes, or with oyle Olyue, tempered with a litle  
whyte ware, and also powre on the chyldes head  
the oyle of violettes.

¶ Remdie for the cough and distillation, or  
Catarrhes of the head.

**S**ometymes the chylde is sore en-  
combred with the cough, and with  
distillation or runnyng of humours  
out of the head, to the nose, the mouth, &  
the brest, the which ye shal remedy thus.

fynt powre warme water on the chyldes  
head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the  
chyldes head, and so do continually the space of  
halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a  
litle Honye on the chyldes tongue to chawe vpon:  
then put youre synger into the chyldes  
mouth, and depresse or holde downe the inner-  
most part, or the roote of the tongue nexte to the  
throte, to prouoke the chylde to vomite, and to  
boyde the grosse and viscouse humours whiche  
be cause of this yll.

Item, take Gumme Arabiche, Gumme Dra-  
gagant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Ly-  
corise, and Suger penedium, all this beaten to-  
geather

The thyrde booke.

gether, geue euery day to the chylde a quantitte  
with sylke newe mylke.

Item, make Almonde mylke with Almondes  
blanched, and only the iuyce or water of fenell,  
whereof when it is well sodden, let the chylde  
eate or drynke morning and euening, or a tyme  
other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the chough haue eraspe-  
rat and made rough the tongue and the roose  
of the mouth, then take of the seede of Quin-  
ces two spoonefulles, bruisethem a lytle, and  
steepe them in warme water the space of two or  
three houres, then strayne the viscoure & grosse  
water from them through a streiner, and that  
remayneth, frye it togeather in a frying panne  
with Suger Penidium, & the oyle of sweete Al-  
mondes, thereof making an electuarium, the  
whiche geue vnto the chylde to receyue: yf the  
chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad-  
vnto the same electuarie, the iuyce of a sweete  
Pomegranate.

Item, agaynst the cough and ouermuche  
heate, take the seede of whyte Popie and Dia-  
gagant, of eche two drams, of the seede of Go-  
wardes foure drams, and beate all these togea-  
ther, and geue at once the wayght of foure pence  
to the chylde, with the water in whiche reasons  
haue ben sodden.

Item, take reasons, and dooing away the  
graynes of them, seeth them togeather with wa-  
ter in a frying pan, so that they burne not to the  
bottome of the pan, then take it from the fyre,  
and



and beate it well in a mortar, temperyng there withall Suger Penidium, and geue of this in the morning and euenyng to the chylde.

Algayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a litle Myrthe beaten to powder, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Honye, and the oyle of sweete Almondes, and of this geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore, the Nurse must auoyde al such thynges the which may engender cough, as Vineger, euermuche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts, & all sharpe thynges. Also she must annoynt the chylde's brest with butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasons, and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a mortar, and to that adde as muche of Suger Penidium, with a litle oyle of violetes, & make an electuare of these, and geue to the chylde the mountenaunce of a hasell Nut.

Remedy for short wynde.

**M**Any tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of breathing or short windinesse, the which to remedie, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the chylde with Honye: but if the disease encrease on the chylde, and that the wynde pypes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and all the places about the eares with oyle Olyue, and also the tongue, for to prouoke boyme, and then powze a litle warme water into the chylde's mouth to washe it withal, and geue to it a litle Lineseede, tempered with Honye and beaten, made after  
the

## The thyzde booke.

the fashion of an electuarve.  
Item, yf the chyldre haue besydes this also the  
fire: then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtels,  
other els Dates sodden with Mylke and flowre.

Agaynst wheales or bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the  
chyl dren, Wheales and blisters on theyr  
tongue and mouth, Whiche thynges  
commeth of the sharpenesse and eager-  
nesse of the Murses mylke, the mouth  
and tongue of the Infant beyng so ten-  
der, that the least thyng that toucheth  
it shal offend it: Wherfore, besydes that  
it is great payne to the chyldre thus to be  
blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it  
is also very perillous and dangerous.  
For suche Wheales which be not ripe &  
seeme blacke, betoken death: Whiche yf  
they be whyte or yelowyshe, then they  
be of lesse peryl.

Agaynst this yll take violettes and Roses,  
and see the them in a litle Rose water, and there-  
with washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Lettuse, the iuyce of  
Petie

Hetic morel, and the iuyce of Purlelayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith the whelkes. And yf the foresayde blysters or whelkes be blackishe : then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item, if the same be very moyste, then take Myre, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them wel together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynt the chyldes tongue therewith.

Item, take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully rype, other els of bnyrpe grapes, whiche is called Uergeus, and with that annoynt the tongue.

Item, it is verye good to washe the tongue with redde wine, and then to strew vpon it the powder of Galles, or els of the barke or rine of Frankencense.

Yf ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper : then take Bole armeniake, Psidium, and Sumach, of ec he thre dramis : also of Galles two dramis, of Alome one dram, all these beate together, and searse then through a searser, and strew that powder on the blisters.

Item, yf these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse suche thynges whiche are moyste and colde, and let her chawe in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the whiche lay on the Infantes mouth and tongue.

Item, Amilum or starch tempered together with  
Rose

## The thyrd booke.

Rose water, & put on the chyldes tongue, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oringes, and do of this on the chyldes tongue in lyke maner: but yf the wheales or blysters be somewhat yellowyshe, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselane. But if the wheales seme whytyshe, then take of Myrre and of Saffron, of eche one dramme, of Suger candye two drams, and beate these to powder, and lay of it on the wheales and tongue.

Of exulceration or clefture, chapping or chynnyng of the mouth.

Sometymes by reason of the hardnes of the Nurses pappes, the chyldes lippes and mouth be exulcerate, hauyng in maner of cleftes & chines in them: and in this case take tozed woll, & dyppe it in the iuyce of Plantane, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hens greace, euery of them beyng warme, and with this annoynt the mouth and lippes of the chyld.

Of appostumation and running of the eares.



When that humoures and matter ys sueth out of the eares, whiche properly commeth of aboundaunt humours in all the bodye, and mooste specially in the head: then take a peece of woll, and dyppe it in Hony myrt with redde wyne, to the whiche is put also a lytle quantitie

quantitie of Alome beate to powder, or of Saffron, then make of the same as it were a tente, and put it in the chyldes eare, and when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynesse of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that which commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, & temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the powder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger, and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chyld haue great payne and dolour by wyndynesse, ventositie, and the humours in this place, then see the Digany and Myrthe with oyle Olyue, and sobeyng warme, put of it into the eares.

#### Of apostumation in the head.



If there be any apostume engendered in the head, (which many tymes chaunceth) (the which causeth the chekes & eyes to be greatly payned, & the eye sight to waxe wannyshe or tawnye: then must be applyed suche thynges which may refrigerate & coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Gowardes, the iuyce of Nyghtshade, and iuyce of Burselande, and temper them with the oyle of Roses, in this dyppe a peece of wooll, and lay it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye, dip it agayne.

De

## The thirde booke.

**O**f the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

**A**gainst swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take Licium, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chylde's eyes, and bynde it to the place with a fyne and soft linnen cloth, then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in which Camomel and Basil haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not red, neyther the browes swollen: then take Myrre, Aloes, Safron, and the leaues of Roses, and temper al these, and stiepe them in olde wine, and binde it to the chylde's eyes with some linnen cloth, and into the chylde's nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolved in womans Mylke.

**O**f the scum or whyte of the eye.

**A**gainst the scum or whyte of the eye, which for the moste parte happeneth to chylde's through ouer muche crying and weeping, take the iuyce of Solatrum, and drop of the same into the chylde's eye, and yf by the same chaunce the bayne of the eyes were reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

**A**gainst immoderate heate, or the feuer.

**I**f the Infant be in great and behement heate, contrary to nature, the whiche is called a feuer: fyyst it shalbe the Nurses part, to eate & vse such thynges the which coole and moysten.

Also

Also to geue unto the Infant of these thynges folowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Gourdes, Sugar, with a lytle Camphere mixed therewithall, tempered well together. Item, it is very good to prouoke it to sweating.

Item, take of the iuyce of Wormewood, of Plantaine, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seeth them a lytle on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barlye meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chyldes brest. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and myre them together, with this oymntment being colde, annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wrestes, and the pulses, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dzyed Roses and poudred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make thereof on the fyre a plaster, the which lay to the chyldes brest somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chylde is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges whiche coole: As Letice, Purslayne, Endiue, Plantayne, and such other.

Agaynst frettyng or knawynge in the belly.

If the chylde be vered with frettyng and knawynge in the belly, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate cryng of the chylde, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great cryng: then shall you take

R. i.

warme

## The thirde booke.

warne water, wherin hath ben sodden Lauander, Cummin, Fenell seede, or the seede of Wyll, and oyle Dlyfe, tempering them together: and herein dyp a peece of Wooll, and therewith soke the chyldes belly oftentymes.

### ¶ Agaynst swellng of the body.

**W**hen the chyldes body or any part thereof is swollen and puffed vp: then take the toppes of Elder tree, and of Malworze, and seeth them in white Wine, and therein lay the Infant, specially if it be not taken with ouer great heate: but yf so be that with swellng in the head the belly be swollen also, then take Myrre, Aloes epatike, and Saffron, and beate them altogether, & temper them with the iuyce of Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

### ¶ Agaynst often sneesyng.

**S**ometimes the Infantes be sore troubled and vexed with often sternutation and sneesyng, whiche thynge yf it come of the Apostume in the head: then shall ye minister suche thinges to the head which refrigerate and coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces of the hearbes, or other thynge. If this come of any other cause then of Apostume: then take Basyl, be it greene or dry, and put of the iuyce or powder of it into the chyldes nose. But yf this sneesyng come and begin with heate, and that the chyldes eyes seme as they grewe inwarde for payne thereof: then lay to the chyldes head the  
leaves



leaves of Burflaine, or Gowarde, cut in thinne  
 fyces and tempered with the oyle of Roses and  
 Barlye meale, and also the yolke of an egge.

**C** Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

**T**Hese whelkes yf they appeare blacke vpon  
 the body, they signifie peryll of lyfe, and so  
 much the more, the greater quantitie that  
 there is of them: but yf they seeme whytyshe or  
 reddysh, it is no peryll, and may easily be cured.  
 Wherefore take the leaves of the red Rose, the  
 leaves of Mirtils, and of Tamariscus, and seeth  
 these in water, and in that water wet a linnen  
 cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lykewyle it is good to annoynt the  
 same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtylles, and  
 Tamariscus. If the whelkes be whyte or reddish,  
 then let them be rype before ye minister any  
 thyng to them: and when they be open and be-  
 gyn to matter, then to cleanse, purifie, and to  
 dry them, beyng rype and broken. It is very  
 good to washe the same whelkes with Mulsun  
 or Hydromell, in whiche Saltpeter is dissolved.  
 Mulsun and Hydromell is, water and honye  
 sodden together.

**C** Agaynst swelling of the Coddes.

**M**Any tymes chaunceth to chyldren (tho-  
 rowe ouermuch crying) swelling about  
 the Coddes, and sometymes burstenesse,

R. ii.

and

## The thirde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling sometymes cometh by inflammation or great heate, and sometymes with onely wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddess wyll sometymes appeare so styffe as a labour, and shyne as it were an horne. The remedie for this is, to take a quart of double beare woort, and therein seeth of the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue a quarter of an handfull, of fenell, Wyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull, cut and bruse all these hearbes together, and seeth them from the quart to the pinte, then strayne them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer seeth so much Beaneflowre as may serue to make a plaster, thereto addyng at the latter ende two or thre spoonefulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddess. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, suche as I haue oftentimes spoken of before.

### Agaynst swelling of the Nauell.

**A**lso sometymes the chyldes Nauell swelleth, and specially strayght after the byrth when it is cut. For this, take Spyke celtike, and seeth it in the oyle of Almondess myxed with a lytle Turpentine, then in this dyp wool, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of ouermuch crying, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of  
fayre

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxij.

Take fayre olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, & temper these with red wine, and then in this dyp a peece of tow, and lay it to the Mauell.

Agaynst vnslleepynesse.

**A**gainst vnslleepynesse, that is, when the chylde is destitute & wanteth his due & naturall rest, all the while crying and weeping. For this take two heades (with the seedes therein conteyned) of whyte Popie, and with one sponesfull of Rose water, and thre or foure droppes of Vineger, stampe them in a mortar reasonably, then adde thereto two sponesfulles of womans mylke, and the waight of an halfe peny of Saffron, with halfe a sponesfull of Barlie flowre, the which yet stampe a lytle together agayne, and then lay it in a fyne thynne double linnen cloth, and apply it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a lytle of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnslleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurses mylke (as many tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of Violetes, and put vnto it a lytle quantitie of Vineger, and of this licour drop oftentymes into the chylde's nosehilles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, & temper it with the iuyce of Lettise, and there with annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, & farther, see that the Nurses mylke may be amended.

R. iij.

Against

## The thirde booke.

### ¶ Agaynst yeryng of the hychat.

**H**is yeryng commeth eyther of coldnesse of the stomacke, other els of ouermuche fulnesse, or for lacke of meate & emptines of the stomacke, or els by some hot and colerike qualitie bytyng vpon the mouth of the stomacke.

As often as it commeth by the abundaunce of meate and fulnesse, the remedie is to prouoke it to vomite. If by coldnesse of the stomacke, then annoynt the stomacke with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomacke a plaster made of the seede of Byll, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Myntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate or coleryke qualitie, then take the oyle of Violettes, or of Roses, the iuyce of Endiue, or of any other suche hearbes, the whiche haue power to infrigidate and coole, and temper the same with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes stomacke.

And when it proceedeth by defect and lacke of meate or emptines of the stomacke, then geue to the chyld to feede vpon mylke, and other good holtsome thynges to suppe, neyther passe not greatly though the chyld reiecte and vomite by agayne that the whiche it receyueth, for so muche euer wyll remayne in the stomacke that shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to nouryshe it.

Agaynst

Agaynst often parbreaking by weaknesse and  
feeblenesse of the Stomacke.



Agaynst ouermuche parbreaking,  
beate foure graynes of Cloues, and  
geue it to the chyld to drinke, with  
foure or fiue sponesfuls of red wine.

Item, take of Mastike, whyte  
frankensence, and the leaues of the redde Rose,  
so much as shalbe sufficient, and all these beaten  
togeather, temper them with the iuyce of Myntes,  
& make a plaster of it, laying it to the chyldes  
stomacke. But yf the chyldes vomtyng be very  
behement, then put vnto these foresayd thynges  
a quantitie of Rose vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hotte in  
an Ouen, or els in a fryng panne ouer the fyre,  
tyll it ware browne, then beate it to powder  
agayne, putting it into vineger, and to these ad  
the yolke of an egge hard rosted, Mastike, fran-  
kensence, and Gumme Arabicke, and temper all  
these with the iuyce of Myntes, makynge of it a  
plaster, the whiche lay to the chyldes stomacke,  
and to the chyldes mouth & nose holde a warme  
toste of bread.

Causes of this yll be thre. The fyrst, yf the  
chyld haue taken more mylke then it is able to  
concocte and digest. The seconde, yf the sur-  
les mylke be ouerthirne, wateryshe, and fluythe.  
The thyrde, yf the same mylke be impure, fe-  
culent, and corrupt. These causes prouoke vo-  
mite, and specially yf the chyld also haue a

R. iiii.

weake

## The thirde booke.

weake and waterish stomacke: wherfore ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.

First let the chyld sucke lesse then it did before, and then also marke that which the chyld doth perbrake, whether it sauer sharpely lyke Vineger, and that it be whytyshe: for if it be so, then take of whyte Frankensence. viii. graynes, of dyed Rue. xx. graynes: beate these to powder, and geue it to the chyld to drynke with the syrope of red Roses.

Or els let the Nurse chawe Cummin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chyld.

Take Masticke, Accatia, Xiloaloes, Galles, whyte Frankensence, tosted Bread, of eche lyke muche, beate them togeather, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomacke.

But if it so be that the perbraking of the chyld sauer not after the fashyon of Vineger, but after some other sowre sauour, and that it be not whitish, but pale or yelowyshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, & lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomacke, Take Barly meale, wyld Mulberies, and Psidium, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water, and lay it to the chyldes stomacke.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomacke be somewhat wateryshe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynt it with the water of Roses, in the which Muske hath been dissolved, or els the  
water

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the iuyce of Quinces, with a lytle Cloues and Sugar, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith tempered and myxed.

Agaynst fearefull and terrible dreames.

**A**lso sometimes the chyldren be vexed and vniquieted with fearefull and terrible dreames in their sleepe, whiche thyng for the most part commeth of the abundaunce of foode, and ouermuch meate or drynkes, whiche for the copie and superfluitie thereof, can not be conuict ne overcome of nature, wherefore necessarily it putrifieth and corrupteth: the noysome and hydious vapours whereof, styng vp to the head in time of sleepe, cause these terrible fantasies in the sleepe. And thus it may be remedied. First take heede that ye lay not the chylde to sleepe strayght after it hath fed, and also let it lycke a litle honie, swallowing it downe, so that by it, such thinges the which be somewhat harde to digest and concoct, may the soner be digested, and the refuse the more easly to descende into the guttes.

Item, euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram of the electuarie called Diamuscum, or Diaplicis. Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with mylke, as sayth Rasus.

Agaynst issuing forth of the Fundament gutte.

**F**OR the issuing forth of this gutte, when the chylde labourerh to ease it selfe: Take Mirtylles, Acorne cuppes, red Roses dyed, burnt

## The thirde booke.

burnt Hartes horne, burnt Alome, Goates  
hoofe, Balauftium, and Galles, of ech lyke much,  
and seeth all these together with water, so long  
till the water haue receyued the strength of the  
ingredience, and with this water being warme,  
washe the gut, and so conuey it into the body a-  
gayne, as I taught you in the seconde booke.

### ¶ Agaynst Tenasmus.



Enasmus is a disease when the  
chuld enforceth it selfe to the stoole,  
and yet can do nothing, the which  
thyng oftentimes chaunceth to  
chylde, most commonly procee-  
dyng of cold. Agaynst the which, ye shal vse these  
remedies. Take Garden Cresses and Cummin  
seede, of eche lyke muche, beate them togeather,  
and temper them with olde Butter, and geue it  
the chylde to drynke with colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, & lay it vpon coales,  
whose fume let the chylde receiue beneath in the  
fundement, the fume beyng inclosed rounde  
about with clothes.

Item, take Tarre, and lyke wyle make fume  
of it, receiuyng the fume as before.

### ¶ Agaynst Woozmes in the belly.

Sometymes there breede Woozmes in the  
guttles, of the bygnesse and quantitie of such  
as are wonte to be in olde Cheese, called  
Mytes, and some lyke Lyce. And sometyme in  
the belly be engendred Woozmes of the bygnesse  
of



of earth wormes, called Cases. Agaynst these vse this remedie. Take the water of Centumnodia, and geue it to the chylde to drynke with mylke.

Item, take of whyte Corall, the scraping of Iuory, of Hartes horne burnt, and of Treos, of eche a scruple, of Suger Candie one ounce and an halfe, of the water of Centumnodia, so much as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, and of this make suppositaries, ministring to the chylde euery day the waight of two drammes.

Other wyse accordyng to Rasus mynde. Take of Commin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Oxe gall, makyng thereof a plaster, the whiche ye shall lay to the Infantes Naueil.

Item, oyle Oliue taken and drunken a small quantitie thereof, is very good to kyll all maner of wormes which breede in the gutte, neere to the fundement. Take the fynest Cotten, & therof make suppositaries, the whiche ye shall annoynt with the oyle of wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kynelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chylde's syttyng place.

Item, it shall greatly profite the chylde, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is soddered wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntment for the same. Take of wormewood, & of Lupines, of ech two dramms, of  
Siler

## The thirde booke.

Siler montanum, Commin, Cockle, Centorie, and Centonicum, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, al these thynges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of Wormewood, or of bytter Almons, the wayght of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of ware, and make hereof an oyntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fyre, or in some warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of Wormewood and Masticke, of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of Coriander preparat, sixe drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rie meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder, sixe drams, of Saffron two drammes, temper all these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Hauell the breadth of a hand.

Item, geue the chyld the wayght of foure pence of the powder of Aloes cicotrine, with fayre water fyrst sodden & sweeted with Suger, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is soueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long Wormes. Take of the iuyce of Wormewood, and of Dregall, of both two ounces, of Colocinthis. viii. drammes, temper all these well together, adding to it a lytle Wheaten meale, & make hereof a plaster, the whiche lay to the Hauell of the chyld.

Item,

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxvi.

¶ Item a bath for the same.

Take Wormewood and Gaules, & seeth them in water, and let the chyld be bathed in it by to the Nauell.

¶ Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

**A**gainst gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skin, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpnes of brine or sweat: Take Mirtils and beate them to powder, and strew thereof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Ciprus, of Tragacantum, so much as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, & strew of the powder on the chaufed place.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte frankencense one dramme, and melt these togeather. and then take .viii. graynes of Camphere dissolved in Rose water, and myxe therewithal, and of all this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall. Also Vnguentum album, & Vnguentum rubeum be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherein Plantaine, Knotgrasse, Docke roetes, or Bursa pastoris is sodden, is very good for the same.

¶ Of the falling sicknesse.

**S**ometymes these Infantes be bered and encombred with the falling sicknesse, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that  
it

## The thirde booke.

it hath this disease strayght foorth with the byrth: Cause of the which, is colde and yll humours in the head and braynes. Another is, that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by some accidentall causes, in which case, yf it leaue not the chylde, being a man chylde, before he be .xxv. yeeres of age, and the woman chylde, about the tyme of hauyng her fyrst flowres, if it forsake them not in this space, neyther by the myght of Nature, neyther of Medicines, then is it lyke neuer to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this disease come not by Nature, but by some accidentall cause afterwarde: then geue diligent heede that the Nurses mylke be very good, & conuenient to the chyldes Nature. And for the same purpose, yf necessitie require, it shalbe very good to purge and cense the Nurses body with due and meete medicines, and she must auoyde all such thinges the which do coole and moysten: and to suffer the chylde to receyue no more mylke at once, then it may be able well to digest.

Agaynst this cruell disease, auctours muche commende the roote of a Pionie, onely hanged about the chyldes necke.

Item, the same roote dyled & beaten to powder, and so oftentimes geuen to the chylde to take, sometymes with drynke, sometymes with potage, pap, or mylke, or any other wayes. Likewise the seede of Pionie is very good.

Furthermore powre nowe and then into the chyldes nosethryls of oyle of Castorium, or the  
oyle

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxviij.

oyle of Costus, or of Euforbium: Also let the chylde smell to Rue and to Asa fetida.

Item, to hange Viscum quersinum, whiche is gathered in Marche the Moone decreasyng, about the chylde's necke, is very good. Diuers other thynges there be whiche myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this tyme.

Consumption or pynning away of the body.

**W**hen the Infant falleth away, and the flesh rebateth, remayning nothing but as it were skyn and bone, and thereby the chylde wareth sickely: Then let the Infant be often bathed in water, in whiche hath been sodden the head and the feete of a weather, so long tyll the fleshe part from the bones of his owne accorde: and euery tyme that the chylde commeth forth of the bath, fyrst let it be wyped and dyled cleane, and then annoynt it with this oyntment. Take fresh Butter, oyle of Violettes, and oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe Porke halfe an ounce, of whyte ware two drammes: melt all these thynges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoyntyng therewith the chylde's body.

Item, take whyte Ware, Swines grese, Sheepes tallowe, freshe Butter: melt all these thynges together, and strayne them, making of it an oyntment, and annoynt the chylde withall once or twyse euery day. But the chiefe hope  
of

## The thirde booke.

of restauration, must be in light, restorative, and pure nouryshyng meates.

¶ Of lassitude, wearinesse, or heauinesse of the chyldes body.

**S**ometymes it chaunceth, that the chyldes members of the body be so feeble, as though it had the paulsey, so that with that partes of the body the chyld can not helpe it selfe, neyther can it lyft by the handes, armes, ne stande on the feete. If the chyld haue this disease whylest it sucketh, then let the Nurse be comforted and strengthened with such thynges the which haue vertue to heate and to dry. Also let the Nurse feede only on rosted or fryed meates, and that she forbear from mylke, fysh, and hard or salt powdered fleshe: for commonly this disease springeth of cold and moyst humours, beseeging the sinnewes.

Furthermore, let not the Nurse vse any watered Wine, or myxed, but mere and in his owne kynd: and let her bath the chyld euer before she geue it sucke, after, annoyntyng it with the oyle of Castorium, or the oyle of Costum, and let the chylde drynke euery day a quantitie of this electuarie folowynge.

Take garden Mynt, Cinamome, Cummin, dry Roses, Masticke, Fenugreke, Valeriane, Amios, Doronicum, Zedoarium, Cloues, Saunders, Xiloaloes, of eche a dram, of Muske halfe a dram, beate al those to powder, and confict them with claryfyed & depured honye, making thereof

an

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxviii.

an electuarie, of the which euery day geue vnto the chylde the weyght of two pence to drynke with white wine. If the chylde haue this disease in euery part of the body, then take an ounce of Ware, and a dram of Eutorbium, the which Eutorbium ye shall beate in a mortar with. v. or. vi. droppes of Oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fire, adding ther vnto so much Oyle as may be sufficient to make a searcloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

**C** Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsey.

If the chylde happen to be vexed with tremblyng or shakynge of the body, or the partes thereof, so that ye feare the Palsie of the same part, or that the fallynge sicknesse shoulde ensue: then remedy it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, & temper them together, warming it, and therewith annoynt the backe or reines, and the other shaking members: ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bath the chylde in the decoction of Rosemary, Sage, Tyme, Hysope, Sauery, Alexander, Smalage. &c. is very soueraigne.

If you can not cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the Phisitians.

S. i.

Agaynst

## The thirde booke.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stop-  
pyng of the vrine.

**S**trangury, Dissury, and the difficultie in ma-  
kyng of water, oftentimes chaunceth to  
chyl dren by reason of the stone, or about-  
daunce of grauell, other els many times of some  
other viscos, slimie, and flegmatike matter, in  
maner & forme of dregs or ragges ouerwhar-  
ting and crossyng the passage, wherby the vrine  
shoulde passe forth, in such wyse, that (without  
great paine) the chylde can not make his water,  
and that yet but in small quantitie at once.

Which of these wayes so euer it come, it shal-  
be very good to bath the chylde by to the Grauell  
in the decoction of Peritorie of the wall, Mal-  
lowes, Holyoke, Lyn seede, Lillie rootes, Fene-  
greke, and Sauery, other els with a sponge or  
double linnen cloth dypped therein, estsones to  
foment the share and neather part of the belly  
agaynst the bladder.

But in men chyl dren cheefely foment them  
on the straighes, betweene the fundement and  
the coddes, the whiche place in Latine is called  
Perineum, for there in them lieth the necke of the  
Bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation,  
dry the places fomented, and whylest they be yet  
red with bathyng, annoynt them with the oyle  
of Scorpions, to be had at the Apothecaries, or  
els the oyle called Petroleum.

And yf further neede shall require it, ye may  
apply



apply this plaster folowynge to the foresayde places. Take of Parsley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handfull, of Peritorie, Malloves, Holyoke rootes, of eche an handfull, seeth these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll such time as they be soft, then powre out the ale from them, and stampe the hearbes in a stone moxter, adding thereunto of the seedes of ffenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item, of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lyke wyse to fyne powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, Petroleum, or other appertiffe oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these wel commixed together, make a plaster, and lay to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administrated in wardes, it is but folly, for so muche as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thyng within foorth.

This difficultie in makynge water, may ensue by other meanes, wherof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

Of goggle eyes, or looking a squint.

If the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it looke a squint, then fyrst sette the cradell in suche a place, that the lyght may come directly and ryght in the chyldes face, neyther in the one syde, neyther in the other, neyther aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on whiche syde that the eyes doo goggle, and let the lyght come vnto it on the

## The thirde booke.

contrary syde, so to returne the syght. And in the nyght season set a Candell on the contrary syde, so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place. And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of dyuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde, and specially of the coloure of lyght greene, or yelow, for the chylde shall haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours. And in returnyng the eye sight towarde such thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne. And this shalbe sufficient for this time, of the diseases of chyl dren after they be borne, making here an ende of this third booke, for this tyme.

¶ Of such thinges the which shalbe entrea-  
ten of in this fourth Booke.

Cap. i.

**H**ere in this fourth booke  
(by the leaue of God) shal  
briefly be declared suche  
thynges whiche may far-  
ther or hinder the concep-  
tion of man, whiche as it may be by dy-  
uers meanes letted and hyndered, so  
also by many other wayes, it may be  
farthered and amended. Also to knowe  
by certayne signes and tokens, whether  
the woman be conceyued or no, & whe-  
ther the conception be male or femiale,  
and finally certayne remedies and me-  
dicines to farther and helpe conception,  
and thereafter we wyll (accoording to  
our promise in the Prologue) set foorth  
certayne bellifying receiptes, & so make  
an ende of this whole treatise.

S. iij.

¶ Of

## The fourth booke.

Of conception, and how many wayes it may  
be hindred or letted. Chap. ii.



Here is nothyng vnder heauen,  
which so manifest and playnely  
doth declare and shewe the mag-  
nificent myghtinesse of the om-  
nipotent lyving **GOD**, as doth  
the perpetuall and continuall  
generation and conception of lyuyng thynges  
here in earth, by the whiche is saued, prozaged,  
and augmented the kynde of all thynges. And  
where that this almightie Lorde and creatoure  
hath so institute and ordayned, that no singuler  
thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth) should con-  
tinuallly remayne and abyde: yet hath he geuen  
from the beginning, and instinced such a power  
& vertue vnto these mortall creatures, that they  
may engender & produce other like thynges vnto  
them selfe, and vnto their owne similitude, in  
the which alway is saued the seede of posteritie.  
Were not this prouision had by almightie God,  
the nature and kynde of all maner of thynges  
woulde soone peryshe and come to an ende, the  
whiche vertue and power of generation many  
tymes doth halte and misse, by defect and the  
contrary disposition in the partes generaunt.  
As ye may euidently see in the sowyng of Corne  
and all other maner of seede. So that there be  
in all maner of generation three principal parts  
concurrent to the same, the sower, the seede so-  
wen, and the receptacle or place receyuyng and  
contayn

contaynyng the seede. If there be fault in any of these thre, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto such tyme as the fault be remoued, or amended.

The Earth vnto all Seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contaynyng clyppynge and embracing them in he wombe, feedyng and fosteryng them as the Mother doth the chyld in her Bellye or Matrix, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto theyr nature and kinde: But yf this seede conceyued in the bowles of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer waterishe, dankishe, or ouer hot and dry, or els full of stones, grauell, or other rubbysh, or full of yll weedes, whiche may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng: also the seede may be putrifid, or otherwyle viciate and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spirite of it banyshe away and destroyed. The sower may vnoydinately strew and cast the seede on the earth. &c. So that yf there be lette in none of these partes concurrant to generation, or that the lettes be remoued and doone awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplicati- on and encrease-ment of that kynde, of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almyghtie God hath enplanted and sette in the kynde of all thynges.

## The fourth booke.

How many wayes conception may be letted,  
and how the causes may be knowen.

Capit. iii.

Every thyng then, the whiche doth encrease  
in this kynde, must fyrst be conceyued in the  
Wombe and Matrix of the mother, which  
is apt & conuenient for the receypte of such seede.  
And (as I sayd before) as there may be defect and  
lacke in the mother, receiuing the seede, so may  
there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the  
seede it selfe also.

And in women there may be foure generall  
causes by the whiche the conception may be  
impedite and let: ouermuche caliditie or heate  
of the Matrix, ouermuche coldnesse, ouermuche  
humiditie or moystnesse, and ouermuch drynesse.  
Any of these foure qualities exceedyng tempe-  
rancie, may be sufficient causes to let due con-  
ception.

Wherfore the ryght excellent Philitian Hipoc-  
rates in the fyfth booke of his Amphorismes  
sayth, All such women the which haue cold and  
dense Matrices can not conceyue, and suche as  
haue moyst & waterythe Matrices can not con-  
ceyue, for the power of the seede is extinguisht  
in it: also hauing dry Matrices, conceyue not,  
for the seede perisheth for lacke of due nutriment  
and foode: but that Matrix the whiche hath all  
these qualitties in temperancie, that is fruitefull.  
This is Hipocrates saying, the whiche thyng  
also

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxij.

also may be well perceyued by a familiar example of the sowynge of corne.

For yf it be sown in ouercolde places, suche as be in the partes of a Countrey called Scythia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall Snowe, or froste, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sown, wyll neuer come to profe, nor fructifie, but through the behemente coldnesse of the place in the whiche it is conceyued, the lyfe and quicknesse of the grayne is bitery destroyed and adnight-lated.

And further, as concernyng ouermuch humiditie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or maryshe and watery ground, the seede wyll peryshe thowwe the ouermuch abundance of water, which extinguysheth the liuelynesse and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Likewyse yf it be sown in such a countrey or place where is ouergreat heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yeere be so dry, that there come no rayne at all to alay the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne: then shall the seede sown, wyther and dry away, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

And if it be sown in dry places, where neuer cometh rayne, or on the sand and grauely places, in such a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceyued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore, yf the Matrix be dissempered, by

## The fourth booke.

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it agayne to temperauncie, by such remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man: as yf the seede be ouer hot, the which the woman shall feeie as it were burnyng hot, or to cold, the which she shall feeie as it were in maner colde as yse, or to fluye or thinne &c. Diuers others wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not neede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceyue, the cause comyng of ouermuch frigiditie or coldnesse in the Matrix, that shall she know by these tokens. She shall feeie great colde about the sydes, the reynes of the backe, and the Matrix; her brine shal appeare white and thinnishe, and sometymes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thynges shall noy her, hotte thynges shall greatly comfort her.

But if it come by ouermuch humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she know by these signes. If the body of her be of a fat & grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the begynnyng and the latter ende of them, certaine viscouz and watery substaunce, and that her brine be white, thicke, and sometime as it were mylke: Also that she feeie great cold and payne about the Matrix and priuie partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the reynes of her backe.

And when ouermuche heate or dryth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of concepti-  
on, then is the brine hygh coloured, redde, or ye-  
lowe,



to we, beyng thinne, with certayne moles ap-  
pearyng in the water: the woman hath great  
thyrst, and bytter rylyng or belchynges out of  
the stomache into the mouth. And many tymes  
they that are in this case, are very spare and  
leane in all theyr body, hauyng also but small  
quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng may  
happen eyther by ouermuche watche, or ouer-  
muche fastyng, labour, trauayle, sorowe, sike-  
nesse. &c. But suche women whiche naturally  
are thus spare and leane, may very hardlye be  
brought to a temperance agayne, and be made  
apt to conceyue. And this shalbe sufficient for  
this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his ex-  
cesse causeth sterilitie. Now wyll we shew how  
it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception  
be in the woman, or els in the man, and how to  
know whether the woman be conceyued or no,  
accordyng to the mynde of ryght expert Physi-  
cians.

**H**owe to knowe whether lacke of  
conception be of the woman or of the man,  
and howe it may be perceyued whe-  
ther she be conceyued or no.

Chap. iiii.

**Y**f ye be desyrous to knowe whether the  
man or the woman be hynderaunce in  
conception: Let eche of them take of  
reheate

## The fourth booke.

Wheate and Barly cornes, and of Beanes, of  
eche. vii. the which they shall suffer to be steeped  
in their severall brine the space of twentie and  
foure houres: then take two pottes, such as they  
set Beliflowes in, fyll them with good earth,  
and in the one let be set the Wheate, Barly, and  
Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the  
other the Wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped  
in the womans water, and every morning the  
space of. viii. or. x. dayes, let eche of them with  
theyr proper brine water the sayde seedes sown  
in the foresayd pottes: and marke whose potte  
doth proue, and the seedes therein conteyned  
doth grow, in that partie is not the lacke of con-  
ception, and see that there come no other water  
or rayne on the pottes: but trust not much this  
farre set experiment.

Item accordyng to Hipocrates wytyng, yf ye  
wyll knowe whether the fault be in the woman  
or no, then let the woman receyue into her body  
bnderneath, beyng well and closely closed round  
about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as  
Laudanum, Storax calamite, Lignum Aloes,  
Mulle, Ambre, and such other, and yf the odour  
and savour of such thynges ascende thozow her  
body by vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande that  
sterilitie commeth not of the womans parte: yf  
not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf she take Garlicke, beyng pyllled out  
of the huskes, and conuay of it into the priue  
partes, and yf the sent of it ascende bype tho-  
zowe the body vnto the nose, the woman is  
faultlesse,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxiij.

faultlesse: yf not, then is there lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and appareance, yet be they not alwayes vnfal-  
lible, but onely lykely.

Whether she be conceyued alredy or no, ye shal knowe by these signes. First the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but waxe lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begin to waxe rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be: the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwyle then she was vled to do before that tyme, also her bryne waxeth spyshe and thyckyshe by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matric very fastly and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynt of a needle may scarce enter.

To knowe whe-  
ther the woman  
be conceyued, or  
no.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceyued or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the .v. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of Millicratum to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feele great payne, gna wyng, and tumblyng in her belly, then be ye sure that she is conceyued. This Millicratum is a drynke, made of one part Wine, another part Water, sodden together, with a quantitie of honye.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nayle  
of

## The fourth booke.

of one of her fyngers, and yf the mylke flewe and spread abroad vpon it by and by, then it is a woman chyld: but yf the drop of mylke continue and stande styl vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a signe of a man chyld.

Item, if it be a male, then shal the woman with chyld be well coloured, and lyght in goyng, her belly rounde, bigger towarde the right side, then the left (for commonly the man chyld lieth in the right syde, the woman in the left side) and in the time of her bearing she shal better digest & like her meate, her stomacke nothyng so queisie ne feble.

Of certayne remedies and medicines which may further the woman to conceyue. Cap. v.



A sterilitie then for the most part ensueth and commeth of the distemperauncie of one of these foure forenamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the same when it chaunceth, must be done by suche thynges the which haue contrary power and operation to the excessiue qualitie, for by that shal it be reduced to his temperauncie agayne.

As yf that coldnesse and moystnesse exceeding temperancie in the Matrix be occasion of sterilitie, then muste she apply suche thynges to that place the whiche be of nature hotte and dry, the which may califie and warme the place, and also dry vp the yll moystnes and humours conteyned

ned in the same, hindering conception.

And for because that the most generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceede of colde, wateryshe, and flegmatike humours, whiche bedeawnyng the inner sydes and holownesse of the Matrix, with the porte and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans Wombe or Matrix, can not there remayne ne cleave: neyther is the mouth or port of the Wombe apt or able to close it selfe sufficiently after reception of the seede, the flewme and si mie humours withstanding it, the which vnlesse they be discussed, or dyled away, the seede alway slippeth and flydeth forth as fast as it entreth in.

Wherfore to remedie and to do away the foresayd impediment, ye shall vse the meanes which foloweth.

First, within a day or two after the womans Termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Physitian take a Purgation, whiche may purge flegme and waterishnesse, and then the next or the thyrde day after, let her lye in a Bath by almost to the Nauell, in the whiche Bath ye shall decoct and seeth these hearbes folowynge. Take of Bay leaues, Malloves, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomel, Maioram, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage three handfulles, of Mercurie and Brankursin of eche two handfulles, seeth all these hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water, and the other halfe redde Wine,

## The fourth booke.

Wine, in this bath let her remaine the space of a good halfe houre, and a litle before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drynke of this electuarie folowynge.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Balingall, Cinamome, and long Pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annis seeede the wayght of two grottes, of Sage leaues dried, the wayght of three grottes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small powder, temper them altogether in so much pure clarified Honye, as may be sufficient to receyue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fyne Suger, as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grottes, with .viii. ix. oz. x. sponesfulles of good Whyte oz. Claret Wine, other els with good Maluesey oz. Muscadel.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornynge one houre before breakfast, oz dinner, other els .v. oz. vi. houres after dynner, so that it be not done vppon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornynge, then at nyght three oz. foure houres after supper, let her receyue vnderneath her clothes the vapoure of these thynges folowynge into the priuitie. Take of Lauender dried, of vnset Tyme, Bay berries, Iuie leaues, of eche halfe a litle handfull, of whyte frankensence the wayght of foure grottes, of Sage dried, oz other, two litle handfulls of Rosemarie  
leaues

leaves one handfull, seeth these togeather in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour thereof, sitting grouelyng, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or conduitte, thoro we the which the vapour may be directed into the womans priuie passage, the neere thereby, that the vertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyppe wooll, or els fyne linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priuie passage, there to remayne the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuarie, and vapour, I counsell them that haue neede, to vse them the space of three dayes continually, and then, the thyrde nyght to company with her husbnde, and by the grace of G D she shalbe spedde. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath onely, or the electuarie alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther remedie, haue been aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, woorketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceeding of colde, moyste, and flegmaticke humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperauncie in heate and dryeth: then let her be purged of coler, or other vnkynnd heate bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then afterward to vse bathes, electuaries, and vapours, of moderately cooling thynges, as of Roses, violettes, Lettuse, Purs-

## The fourth booke.

layne, Blantayne, and diuers other.

But forasmuche that most commonly the bnt-  
aptitude of conception (in women hauyng their  
health) spryngeth of the superfluitie of colde and  
moyst humours (whereof we haue already spe-  
ken) therefore all other impedimentes leste a-  
part, ye shall holde ye content with this for this  
tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all  
the occasions whereby conception may be let  
or impedit, then shoulde I here alleage and  
bryng in all the diseases that may happen to a  
woman in that partes, with the remedies there-  
of, whiche were a long woorke, and not proper  
for this volume.

In this. vi. Chapter is entreated of dyuers  
bellisyng receiptes, as ye may  
hereafter reade.

**T**H Embellyshyng or bellysyng me-  
dicines wherof I entende to speake  
here, be not to be vnderstanden to  
be of that sort, whereby any Adisti-  
cious or outwarde forraigne beauntye  
or set colours shoulde be acquired or gotten, the  
whiche farre set & damnable curiositie, I doubt  
not but that all honest and vertuous sadde wo-  
men doo vtterly abhorre and contemne: but  
here mine only meaning is, to shewe how to re-  
moue certayne blemishes, and as it were weedes  
of the body, through the whiche many tymes  
the naturall beauntye thereof is obscured and de-  
faced, for as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer so  
beautiful,



The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvii.

beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded, and looked vnto, the weedes entermynglyng them selues among the good hearbes, wyll defourme and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well dilygented and pycked, yet alwayes therein wyll remaine some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche euer when tyme or season serueth, Nature thrusteth forth.

Lyke wyse in the body of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of yll and not necessary humours, with the whiche nature beyng offended and cloyed, expelleth and dryueth them forth sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, accordyng to the aptitude or feeblenesse in resistance of the place receyving it, and the force or violence of nature (there with greened) sendyng it, so that the superfluitie founde in the vpper part and face or superficie of the skinne, ensueth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter conteyned and commixed in the vaines among the blood, and is a great euidence and testimonie thereof. But here I wyll not speake of all kyndes of vtter diseases spryngyng of this inwarde corrupted humours, but onely of suche thynges as commonly chaunce to men and women without any imperishment of their health.

As for example, fyrst I wyl briefely declare the fyltinesse of the head, called in Latin Perrigo,

## The fourth booke.

in English the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in kembering and scratchyng of the head, certayne whyte skales, as it were Branne, falleth of from the head, and lyeth very thicke among and vnder the heare.

**O**f the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

**T**he cause of this Dandruffe commeth by abundance of flegmaticke humours, commyxt with the blood, the whiche dayly and hourelly by incessable sweatynge, euaporateth and issueth forth of the pores, in the skynne that couereth the parbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superficie of the skynne, and there remainyng and geatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helping the Forrest of heare which couereth, harboureth, and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no heare groweth. And most commonly they that haue blacke heare haue more of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffered ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the heares, making them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in kemberyng. And although this superfluitie be not cleanly, yet notwithstanding it shalbe no wysedome for me to teache, ne any other here with encumbred to learne, howe to stoppe it, for feare of further inconueniencies, but onely I counsell you once in tenne dayes at the least, to walke

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxviii.

washe and scoure the head cleane with good lye, wherein let be steeped in a linnen bagge of Annis seede, Commin, dyed Rosemarye, fenegreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke muche: & beware that after the washyng of your head ye take no colde, before the head be perfectly dyed.

And whereas some say, that they which vse ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in such that after they haue been washed, roll vp theyr heare (beyng yet wette) about theyr heades, the colde whereof is daungerous to byring them to Catarrhes and poses, with other inconueniences. Wherefore all diligence muste be had, that the head may be exactly well dyed with warme clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washyng, and then neuer feare no inconueniences, but rather conuenience and commoditie: and let this be done also fastyng in the mornynge, or els one houre before supper, or .v. houres after supper. This ofte washyng shall purifye the skynne of the head, and stedfaste the heare from fallynge, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the senses therein conteyned, and greatlye comfort the braynes.

To take awaye heares from places where  
it is vnseemely.

**I**tem, sometymes heare groweth in places vnseemely, and out of order: as in many maydens and women the heare groweth so lowe

## The fourth booke.

in the foreheades and the temples, that it distingureth them. For this ye may vse three wayes to remoue them: eyther to plucke by one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther els with this lye folowynge.

Take newe burnt Lime foure ounces, of Arsenicke an ounce, steepe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to proue whether it be perfect, dyppe a feather therein, and yf the plume of the feather departe of easlyly, then it is strong enough: with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woude haue bare from heare, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the heares, and they wyll folowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein branne hath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Olyue, beaten and mixt togeather with the iuyce of Singrene or Purlane, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue heare, is with a plaster made of very drye pitche. and bypon leather applyed to the place, the heares beyng fyrste shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Tylers.

Nowe when the heares be by by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a groate, and dissolue it in two spoonefulles of the iuyce of Nyghtshade, or of Benbane, and therewithall annoynt the  
place

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxix.

place two or three tymes every day, the space of  
ix. or .x. dayes, and heare wyll growe no more in  
that place.

To do away freckens, or other spottes  
in the face.

**T**Hese freckens, and such other spottes in the  
face, or other where in the bodye, may be  
taken away by often annoynting them  
with the oyle of Carter, to be founde alwayes at  
the Apothecaries, and suerly that oyle is soue-  
rayne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce  
in halfe a pint of strong whyte wineger, tyl halfe  
be consumed, the mirt therewith Hony. iiii. spones-  
fulles, and the weight of a peny of Mercury sub-  
limid (to be had at the Apothecaries) & seeth these  
togeather agayne tyl it become thicke: with this  
annoynt the freckens, and it wyll destroy them.  
This is also very good for the Morphewe, and  
other discolouration or staynyng of the skinne.

To destroy Wartes, and suche lyke excres-  
cences on the face or els where.

**F**OR this purpose nothyng is so excellent,  
as every day once, the space of three or foure  
dayes, to drop one drop of strong water, cal-  
led Aqua fortis, on them, for this destroyeth them  
in very short tyme.

Item, the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce  
of Marygoldes, is very good for the same.

Item, dissolve a lytle Mercury sublimed in  
Raye water, and therewith drop the Wartes, and  
they

## The fourth booke. ¶

they wyll soone wyther and consume away.

¶ To cleare and clarifie the skin in the hands,

face, or other part of the body.

¶

**F**or this there is nothyng better then to take one spoonefull of the oyle of Carter, and fyve spoonefulles of water, with these commixed together, washe the handes, face, and other partes, for it scoureth, cleanseth, and puryfieth the skynne soueraignely, and wil suffer no filthinesse to remayne in the pores of the flesh: and this oyle of Carter is made one this wyse.

Take wine lyes dyed, the whiche the Goldsmithes do cal Arguyl, and beate it into powder, and then fyll thereof a Goldsmithes crudi-ble, and set it among hotte coles, tyll the Arguyl begyn to waxe blacke: then take it out of the fyre, and let it coole, and bynde it in a linnen cloute, and hang it a lytle ouer the vapour of hotte boylng water: that done, hang this clout with the Arguyl in a glasse with a brode mouth, so that the bagge or clout touch not the bottome of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Carter wil drop downe a lytle and lytle: and the sooner, yf it stande in a very colde and moyst sellar.

Item, to scoure the handes and the body, some vse to washe theyr handes with the powder of Dresse, whiche is the roote of the blew floure- deluce, and some with Beane floure.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good for that purpose, and so is hony.

To

**T**o souple and mollifie the ruggednesse  
of the skynne.

**A**nnoynt the skynne with the oyle of sweete  
Almondcs, the same is very good also for  
chippinges of the lippes or handes.

Item, Beere suet is very proper for the same  
purpose, especially beyng well washed and tem-  
pered with Rose water, where in hath been dis-  
solved two or thre graynes of pure Muske.

Agaynst todayne rysing of pimples through  
vnikind heate in the face, or els where.

**T**ake the whyte of an egge, and beate it well  
with a spoone, & then therewith commixe  
two spoonfulles of Salet oyle, one spoone-  
ful of Rose water, another of the iuyce of Sozel,  
and halfe a litle spoonfull of Vineger, here with  
annoynt the pyples and rydings.

**T**o keepe and preferue the teeth cleane.

**F**irst if they be very yelow and filthie, or blacke  
kythe, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and pycke  
them cleane and whyte, then after to main-  
teyne them cleane, it shalbe very good to rubbe  
them every day with the roote of a Mallowe,  
and to picke them cleane that no meate remaine  
and putrifie betweene the teeth.

Item, take of the small whyte pybble stones  
which be founde by the water sydes, and beate  
them in very smal powder, hereof take an ounce,  
and of Masticke one dram, myngle them togea-  
ther,

## The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in. xiiii. dayes  
rub exactly your teeth, and this shall keepe your  
teeth fayre and white: but beware ye touch not,  
ne bere the gummes therewithall.

Item, to stable and stedfast the teeth, and to  
keepe the gummes in good case, it shalbe very  
good every day in the mornynge, to washe well  
the mouth with red wine.

### ¶ Of stynkyng breath.

**S**tinck of the breath commeth either by occa-  
sion bred in the mouth, or els in the stomack.

If it come from the stomacke, then the body  
must be purged by the further aduice of a Phis-  
tian. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then  
most commonly it commeth of some rotten and  
corrupted holowe teeth, which in this case must  
be plucked out, and the gummes well scoured  
and washed with Vineger wherein hath been  
sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanly  
keepynge of the teeth doth conferre muche to the  
sauernesse of the mouth.

### ¶ Of the rancke sauour of the arneholes.

**T**his vice in many persons is very tedious  
and lothsome: the remedie whereof is, to  
purge fyrst the cholericke and egre hu-  
mours, originall causers of the same, and after-  
warde to wash the arneholes oftentymes with  
the water wherein Moorme wood hath ben sod-  
den togeather with Camomel, and a lytle quan-  
titie of Alome.

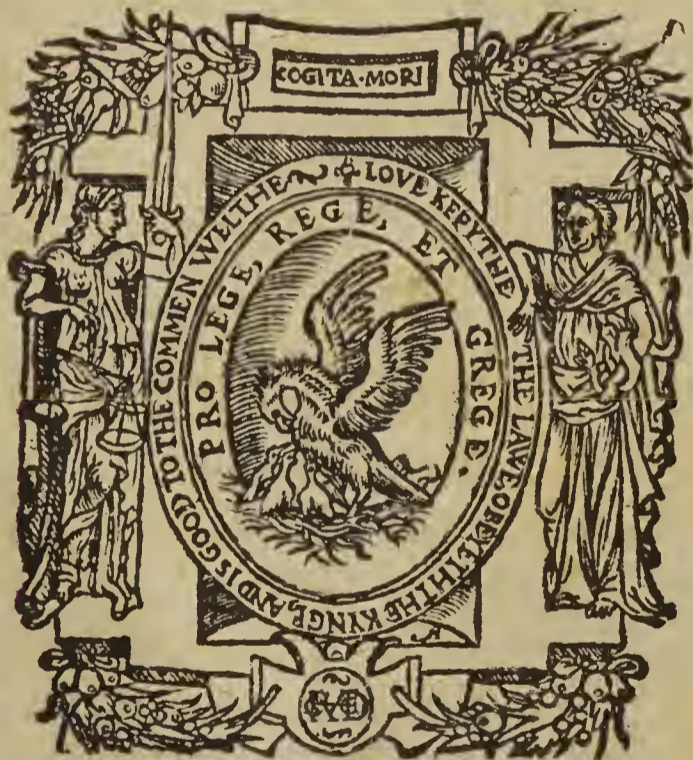
Item,



The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxi.

Item, Authours doo wyte, that the rootes  
of Artichaughes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in  
whyte wine & so drunke, doth cause the stencche  
of the arneholes, and other partes of the body  
by the brine. For (as Galen also dooth testifie)  
he prouoketh copie and plentie of stynkyng and  
vnsauery brine from all partes of the body,  
the whiche propertie it hath by speciall  
gyft, and not only by his hot qualitie.  
And thus here I make an ende  
of this fourth and  
last booke.

FINIS.



Handwritten text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page. The text is mirrored and difficult to decipher due to fading and bleed-through.

1713



